

# RAMCOAVIATION SOLUTION VERSION 5.8 USER GUIDE BOOK KEEPING

## ramco

© 2019 Ramco Systems Limited. All rights reserved. All trademarks acknowledged.

This document is published by **Ramco Systems Ltd**. without any warranty. No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, for any purpose without the written permission of **Ramco Systems Limited**.

Improvements and changes to this text necessitated by typographical errors, inaccuracies of current information or improvements to software programs and/or equipment, may be made by Ramco Systems Limited, at any time and without notice. Such changes will, however, be incorporated into new editions of this document. Any hard copies of this document are to be regarded as temporary reference copies only.

The documentation has been provided for the entire Aviation solution, although only a part of the entire solution may be deployed at the customer site, in accordance with the license agreement between the customer and **Ramco Systems Limited**. Therefore, the documentation made available to the customer may refer to features that are not present in the solution purchased / deployed at the customer site.

m	$\mathbf{C}$
	CO
	$\sim$

1	INTRO	DUCTION	. 8
2	ENTER	PRISE SETUP	. 11
2.	1	SETTING UP ACCOUNTS GROUP	13
	2.1.1	SETTING OPTIONS FOR FINANCE BOOK POSTINGS	13
	2.1.2	SETTING OPTIONS FOR ACCOUNT GROUP	13
	2.1.3	MAINTAINING PART ACCOUNT GROUP	14
	2.1.4	ASSOCIATING PARTS TO ACCOUNT GROUP	15
	2.1.5	MAINTAINING SUPPLIER ACCOUNT GROUP	16
	2.1.6	ASSOCIATE SUPPLIERS TO ACCOUNT GROUP	16
	2.1.7	MAINTAINING CUSTOMER ACCOUNT GROUP	17
	2.1.8	ASSOCIATE CUSTOMERS TO ACCOUNT GROUP	18
2.	2	ACCOUNT DEFINITION	23
	2.2.1	CREATE OPERATING CHART OF ACCOUNTS ID	23
	2.2.2	CREATE OPERATING CHART OF ACCOUNTS	23
	2.2.3	SELECT OPERATIVE ACCOUNT CODE TO ATTACH / COPY	24
	2.2.4	ATTACH / DETACH ACCOUNT CODES TO COMPANY	24
	2.2.5	CREATE REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS ID	25
	2.2.6	CREATE REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS	25
	2.2.7	ATTACH REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS (IMMEDIATELY AFTER CREATION)	26
	2.2.8	COPY REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS (IMMEDIATELY AFTER CREATION)	26
	2.2.9	ATTACH / DETACH POSTING ACCOUNT CODE TO REPORTING ACCOUNT CODE (SUBSEQUENT TO CREATION OF REPORTING COA)	27
	2.2.10	CREATE FINANCIAL CALENDAR	28
	2.2.11	ATTACH FINANCIAL CALENDAR	28
	2.2.12	ATTACH / DETACH CALENDAR	29
	2.2.13	MAINTAIN POSTING RULE	29
2.	3	BANK / CASH / PTT DEFINITION	32
	2.3.1	CREATE BANK	32
	2.3.2	CREATE BANK USAGE INFORMATION	32
	2.3.3	SET BANK CHARGES	33
	2.3.4	SELECT BANK DETAILS	33
	2.3.5	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE BANK CASH DETAILS	34
	2.3.6	SELECT BANK DETAILS	35
	2.3.7	VIEW BANK	35
	2.3.8	CREATE CASH BOOK DETAILS	35

## ramco

# contents

2.4	COMPANY SETUP	46
2.4.1	CREATE CURRENCY AND COUNTRY	46
2.4.2	CREATE COUNTRY	46
2.4.3	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE CURRENCY	47
2.4.4	CREATE COMPANY	47
2.4.5	EDIT COMPANY	48
2.4.6	ASSIGN PERMITTED CURRENCIES	49
2.4.7	UNASSIGN PERMITTED CURRENCIES	49
2.4.8	CREATE FINANCE BOOK	50
2.4.9	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE FINANCE BOOK	51
2.4.10	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE COMPANY	51
2.4.11	CREATE BUSINESS UNIT	52
2.4.12	CREATE BUSINESS UNIT (SPANNING ACROSS COMPANIES)	52
2.4.13	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE BUSINESS UNIT	53
2.4.14	CREATE LOGISTIC ORGANIZATION	53
2.4.15	EDIT LOGISTICS ORGANIZATION	54
2.4.16	MAINTAIN BANK REFERENCE	54
2.4.17	MAP BFG – ORGANIZATION UNIT	55
2.4.18	CREATE SEGMENT	56
2.4.19	EDIT SEGMENT	56
2.4.20	MAINTAIN IDENTIFICATION DETAILS	57
2.4.21	MAINTAIN IDENTIFICATION REFERENCES FOR ENTITIES	57
2.4.22	MAINTAIN ORGANIZATION PARAMETERS	58
2.4.23	MAINTAIN ADDRESS DETAILS	58
2.4.24	EDIT CURRENCY	60
2.4.25	EDIT FINANCE BOOK	61
2.4.26	EDIT BUSINESS UNIT	62
2.4.27	SET FUNCTION DEFAULTS	62
2.4.28	CREATE EXCHANGE RATE TYPE	63
2.4.29	EDIT EXCHANGE RATE TYPE	63
2.4.30	ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE EXCHANGE RATE TYPE	63
2.4.31	CREATE EXCHANGE RATES	64
2.4.32	VIEW EXCHANGE RATES BY DATE	64
2.4.33	MAINTAIN OU – COMPANY MAPPING	64
2.4.34	CREATE QUICK CODES	65
2.5	ACCOUNT RULE DEFINITION	. 70

	2.5.1	DEFINE SINGLE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION	70
	2.5.2	CREATE MULTIPLE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION	71
	2.5.3	CREATE TCD ACCOUNT DEFINITION	72
	2.5.4	CREATE SINGLE ACCOUNT FOR WORK ORDER	73
	2.5.5	CREATE MULTIPLE ACCOUNT FOR WORK ORDER	75
	2.5.6	CREATE ADDITIONAL ACCOUNT DEFINITION	77
	2.5.7	CREATE ITEM ACCOUNT DEFINITION	78
	2.5.8	CREATE BANK CASH ACCOUNT DEFINITION	80
	2.5.9	CREATE PAYABLES ACCOUNT DEFINITION	80
	2.5.10	CREATE RECEIVABLES ACCOUNT DEFINITION	81
	2.5.11	CREATE ASSET ACCOUNT DEFINITION	82
	2.5.12	CREATE CONSUMPTION ACCOUNT DEFINITION	82
	2.5.13	CREATE SERVICE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION	83
2.	6	MAINTAIN EXCLUDE TRANSACTION TYPE FOR TAX BOOK	86
	2.6.1	POST TRANSACTIONS TO TAX BOOK	86
	2.6.2	REVIEWING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS	86
3	BUDGE	TING	89
3.	1	ACCOUNT BASED BUDGET CONTROL AND ANALYSIS	91
3.	1 3.1.1	ACCOUNT BASED BUDGET CONTROL AND ANALYSIS MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET	
3. 3.	3.1.1		91
-	3.1.1	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET	91 93
-	3.1.1 2 3.2.1	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION	91 93 93
3.	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION	91 93 93 94
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS	91 93 93 94 97
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION	91 93 93 94 97 97
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION CILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED	91 93 93 94 97 97 97 IS
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT	91 93 93 94 97 97 97 IS 98
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT CREATED MANUALLY	91 93 93 94 97 97 IS 98 98
3. 4	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT CREATED MANUALLY CREATE BANK STATEMENT	91 93 93 94 97 97 IS 98 98 99
3. 4 4.	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 REVALL	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT CREATE DANK STATEMENT CREATE BANK STATEMENT UNRECONCILE AND GENERATE NEW BANK STATEMENTS	91 93 93 94 97 97 IS 98 98 98 99 100
3. 4 4.	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 REVALL	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT CREATED MANUALLY CREATE BANK STATEMENT UNRECONCILE AND GENERATE NEW BANK STATEMENTS	91 93 93 94 97 97 IS 97 IS 98 98 99 100 . 106
3. 4 4.	3.1.1 2 3.2.1 RECON 1 4.1.1 4.1.2 4.1.3 4.1.4 4.1.5 REVALU 1	MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION ICILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS BANK RECONCILIATION AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED CREATE BANK STATEMENT MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT CREATED MANUALLY CREATE BANK STATEMENT UNRECONCILE AND GENERATE NEW BANK STATEMENTS IATION REVALUATION OF CUSTOMER / SUPPLIER / ACCOUNT BALANCES	91 93 93 94 97 97 97 IS 98 98 98 99 100 . 106 . 106

## ramco

#### SIMULATE ASSET ACCOUNT BALANCE REVALUATION ...... 108 5.1.4 5.1.5 5.1.6 REVERSE CUSTOMER BALANCE REVALUATION ...... 109 5.1.7 REVERSE SUPPLIER BALANCE REVALUATION...... 109 5.1.8 6 TWO-DIMENSION EXPENSE ANALYSIS USING ANALYSIS AND SUB ANALYSIS CODE .... 114 6.1 6.1.1 6.1.2 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE ANALYSIS CODE ...... 115 6.1.3 6.1.4 6.1.5 EDIT SUB ANALYSIS CODE...... 115 6.1.6 6.1.7 6.1.8 6.1.9 UNASSIGN ANALYSIS CODE ...... 117 6.2 CREATE SCHEDULE USING ACCOUNT CODE AND GROUP ...... 120 6.2.1 6.3 CREATE FINANCIAL STATEMENT LAYOUT ...... 123 6.3.1 6.3.2 CREATE FINANCIAL STATEMENT LAYOUT WITH ASSIGNING GROUP AND SECTION 6.3.3 7 ADJUSTMENT ENTRIES GENERATION ...... 127 7.1 7.1.1 7.1.2 7.1.3 REVERSE JOURNAL VOUCHER ...... 128 7.1.4 7.1.5 7.1.6 7.1.7 7.1.8

ramco

	7.1.9	REVIEW/PROCESS ALLOCATION PACKAGES	132
	7.1.10	REVIEW ACCOUNTING INFORMATION	133
	7.2	YEAR END ADJUSTMENT ENTRIES GENERATION WITH REVERSAL OPTION	136
	7.2.1	CREATE REVERSAL JOURNAL VOUCHER	136
	7.3	ACCRUE SERVICE REVENUE AND COST	138
	7.4	RECURRING VOUCHER GENERATION	139
	7.4.1	CREATE RECURRING VOUCHER TEMPLATE	139
	7.5	MEMORANDUM VOUCHER GENERATION	141
	7.5.1	CREATE JOURNAL VOUCHER	141
	7.5.2	CONVERT MEMORANDUM VOUCHER	141
	7.6	FINANCE BOOK CLOSURE	147
	7.6.1	CLOSE RECEIVING FUNCTION CALENDAR	147
	7.6.2	CLOSE INVENTORY MANAGEMENT CALENDAR	147
	7.6.3	CLOSE MAINTENANCE FUNCTION CALENDAR	148
	7.6.4	CLOSE SHIPPING FUNCTION CALENDAR	149
	7.6.5	CLOSE FIXED ASSET MANAGEMENT CALENDAR	149
	7.6.6	CLOSE PAYABLES FUNCTION CALENDAR	150
	7.6.7	CLOSE RECEIVABLES FUNCTION CALENDAR	150
	7.6.8	CLOSE FINANCE BOOK	151
	7.6.9	VIEW PROCESSING STATUS	152
	7.6.10	VIEW PENDING TRANSACTIONS	152
8	TAX INV	/OIVE WINDOW	153
	8.1	MANAGING TAX INVOICE WINDOW	155
	8.1.1	MANAGING TAX INVOICE WINDOW	155

## ramco

# INTRODUCTION

General Accounting – Themes

#### **Enterprise Setup**

The *Enterprise Setup* theme covers the different entities required to support transactions.

#### Budgeting

*Budgeting* theme enables the user to define the account, analysis budget for control and optimizing the activities happening in an organization.

#### **Reconciliation of Financial Transactions**

*Reconciliation of Financial Transactions* theme covers the process of keeping track and settling discrepancies of the transactions that are posted into multiple finance books and bankbooks.

#### **Revaluation**

*Revaluation* theme covers the process that facilitates the reinstatement of foreign currency balances to represent the true financial picture of the company, as on a reporting date.

#### Statutory and Operational MIS

*Statutory and Operational MIS* theme enables the user to gather data for reporting and other operations purposes.

#### **Financial Book Closure**

*Financial Book Closure* theme covers the prerequisites that are needed for the generation of financial statements.

#### **Tax Invoice Window**

*Tax Invoice Window* theme enables the user to manage to tax invoice window for supplier / customer invoices.



### **BUSINESS SCENARIOS**

**Business Scenarios for Enterprise Setup** 

Setting up Account Groups

**Account Definition** 

Bank / Cash / PTT Definition

**Company Setup** 

**Account Rule Definition** 

**Initial Balance Entry** 

**Business Scenarios for Budgeting** 

Account Based Budget Control and Analysis

Analysis Rule Definition

Business Scenarios for Reconciliation of Financial Transactions

**Bank Reconciliation** 

**Business Scenario for Revaluation** 

**Revaluation of Customer / Supplier / Account Balances** 

**Business Scenarios for Statutory and Operational MIS** 

**Two Dimensional Expense Analysis using Analysis Codes** 

Account Base MIS Report Generation

**Financial Statement Layout Definition** 

**Business Scenarios for Financial Book Closure** 

**Adjustment Entries Generation** 

Year End Adjustment Entries Generation with Reversal Option

Accrue Service Revenue and Cost Recurring Voucher Generation

Memorandum Voucher Generation Finance Book Closure

**Business Scenarios for Tax Invoice Window** 

Manage Tax Invoice Window

# **ENTERPRISE SETUP**

Enterprise Modeling refers to the planning and representation of the basic structure of an organization. It forms the backbone for the functioning of the organization. It covers the interaction across business functions (data), the flow of information and applications (reporting **relationships**, legal reporting structures and business reporting structures).

In the rapidly changing current business scenario, information systems must necessarily offer a dynamic modeling which caters to the present needs and is also adaptable to changes in the business environment, say, adding a new plant, changing the business profile of an existing company, etc. This requires a dynamic modeling component that is flexible and responsive to changes.

In Ramco Enterprise Series, Enterprise Modeling aims at providing a flexible organization setup, which has the ability to capture and analyze information from different dimensions of a business enterprise, which forms the basis for crucial decision-making.



#### Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 1 – Setting Up Account Groups

S. No	Flow of Events	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1.	Setting options for finance book postings	Account Group	Set Posting Finance Books	<u>Set Posting</u> <u>Finance</u> <u>Books</u>	1. Set options for finance book posting
2	Setting options	Account Group	Set Options	<u>Set Option</u> s	1. Setting options
3	Maintaining part account group	Account Group	Maintain Part Account Group	<u>Maintain</u> Part Account <u>Group</u>	<ol> <li>Maintaining part account groups.</li> <li>Activating and Inactivating part account groups</li> </ol>
4	Associating parts to account group	Account Group	Associate Parts to Account Group	<u>Associate</u> <u>Parts</u>	<ol> <li>Associating parts to different account groups.</li> <li>Associating different parts to the same account group</li> </ol>
5	Maintaining supplier account group	Account Group	Maintain Supplier Account Group	Maintain Supplier Account Group	<ol> <li>Maintaining supplier account groups.</li> <li>Activating and Inactivating supplier</li> </ol>
6	Associating suppliers to account group	Account Group	Associate suppliers to Account Group	Associate Suppliers	<ol> <li>Associating suppliers to different account groups.</li> <li>Associating different suppliers to the same account group</li> </ol>
7	Maintaining customer group	Account Group	Maintain Customer Account Group	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Customer</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Group</u>	<ol> <li>Maintaining customer account groups.</li> <li>Activating and Inactivating customer</li> </ol>
8	Associating customers to account group	Account Group	Associate suppliers to Account Group	Associate Customers	<ol> <li>Associating suppliers to different account groups.</li> <li>Associating different suppliers to the same account group</li> </ol>

## 2.1 SETTING UP ACCOUNTS GROUP

Every organization maintains individual accounts as a ledger book for all items, suppliers and customers for tracking expenses or revenues incurred on these items or suppliers or customers. This business component provides you with the option of grouping the various accounts since many parts, suppliers or customers are associated with the same set of account codes based on the usage.

Setting up account groups for parts, customers and suppliers facilitates managing the item account and payable account details and efficient tracking of the transactions in the system by tracking the stock or payables account as it flows through different processes in an organization.

#### 2.1.1 SETTING OPTIONS FOR FINANCE BOOK POSTINGS

You can allocate the finance book to post entries for the events identified in the login OU. The finance postings for those events will be entered in the finance book, as associated in this page. You can also associate a default posting finance book for all the events.

1. Select Set Posting Finance Books under Account Group business component. The "Set Posting Finance Books" page appears. See Figure 2.1.

Set Posting Finance Books					= x;	ē ;	⇒ ←	;	6
<ul> <li>Posting Information</li> </ul>				Date Format yyyy-dd-mm					
	Entity Based Posting Finance Books for Expe	ense Accounting Yes 🔻							
Event Based Posting Book Information Entity Based Posting B	Book Information								_
Defaults     Posting Finance Book									
				Al 🖬 🖬 🖿	•			ρ	
e Org Unit Event	Posting Finance Book $ ho$								
		Set Posting Finance Books							-
Record Statistics									_
Last Modified by DMUS	FR		Lat	t Modified Date 2016-08-02		_	_	_	

#### Figure 2.1 Setting finance book postings

- 2. In the **Posting Information** multiline, enter the code identifying the **Posting Finance Book** to be associated with the events identified.
- 3. Click the Set Posting Finance **Books** pushbutton to set the finance book postings.

#### 2.1.2 SETTING OPTIONS FOR ACCOUNT GROUP

You can set the default options for the various fields in the activities of the Account Group business component. You can also modify the options that are already defined.

- 1. Select Set Options under Account Group business component. The "Set Options" page appears. See Figure 2.2.
- 2. Set **Account Group in Part Master** as "Allowed" in the **Editing Options For Finance Information** group box, to allow the modification of the account group in the **Part Administration** business component. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification of account group.
- 3. Set **Account Group of Activated Part** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the account group of activated parts. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification of account group for activated parts.
- 4. Set **Account Group in Supplier Master** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the account group in the **Supplier** business component. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification of account group in the **Supplier** business component.

- 5. Set **Account Group of In-use Supplier** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the account group of in-use supplier.
- 6. Set **Finance Book for Warehouse** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the finance book for the warehouse. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification of the finance book.
- 7. Set **Account Group in Customer master** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the account group in the **Customer** business component. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification.
- 8. Set **Account Group of activated Customer** as "Allowed" to allow the modification of the account group of activated customer. Select "Not Allowed" if you wish to disallow the modification.
- 9. Set **Report Consumption after Main Core Return** as "Yes" to carry out financial postings for spares being returned along with the main core part. Select "No" to carry out financial postings for main core part only.
- 10. Check the appropriate box in the **Finance Posting Options** group box to specify if the finance posting is required for "Skill", "Tools"," Equipment" and "Others". Select the appropriate box in the **Analysis Posting Options** group box to specify if **Analysis Accounting for Aircraft Based Expenses** is required.
- 11. Check the appropriate box in the **Asset Mapping Options** group box to specify the **Enforce Object to Asset Mapping** for "Aircraft", "Component" and "Facility".

🕅 Set Options						-	₽ +	• ?	[¢
				Date Format dd/mm/yyyy					_
- Editing Options for Finance Information									
	Account Group in Part Master	Allowed	•						
	Account Group of Activated Part	Allowed	•						
	Account Group in Supplier master	Allowed	T						
	Account Group of In-use Supplier	Not Allowed	V						
	Finance Book for Warehouse	Not Allowed	•						
	Account Group in Customer master	Allowed	•						
	Account Group of activated Customer	Allowed	•						
	Report Consumption after Main Core return	Yes 🔻							
Finance Posting Options For Resource Type									
Finance Postings Required For:	Skill	Tools	V Equi	pment	Others				
Analysis Posting Options	Analysis Accounting for Aircraft Based Expenses	No 💌							
- Asset Mapping Options Enforce Object to Asset Mapping For: - Accounting Process Parameters	Aircraft	Component	E Facility						
4 4 1 - 6 / 19 ► → + 🗗 🕸 🖏 ▼ ▼ <sub>x</sub>						Ŧ			Q
# Process Parameter	Permitted Values		Value	Status	Error Message				
Cost Center Basis for Resource Adjustment - Base CC not ava	Enter '0' for Task Work Center and '1' for Debit Cost C			Defined					
2 🔲 WIP Policy for Aircraft Maintenance - Internal	Enter '0' for Maint.Consumption, '1' for Maint.Suspens			Defined					
3 🔲 Incidence of Cost booking for Shop Maintenance – External	Enter '0' for Task closure, '1' for Root work order closu			Defined					
4 🔲 Incidence of Cost booking for Shop Maintenance – Internal	Enter '0' for Task closure, '1' for Root work order closu			Defined					
5 Cost Center Basis for Resource Adjustment	Enter '0' for Task Work Center, '1' for Work Order CCR	D and '2' for Base		Defined					
5 Cost and Revenue Accruals for Completed Root Work Orders	Enter '1' for Completed Root Work Orders		1	Defined					
	Set (	Options							_
- Record Statistics									

#### Figure 2.2 Setting options for part account group

- 12. In the Accounting Process Parameters multiline, enter the Value for the process parameter.
- 13. Click **Set Options** pushbutton to set the options.

#### 2.1.3 MAINTAINING PART ACCOUNT GROUP

You can create a part account group and activate or inactivate the part account group at any time.

- 1. Select Maintain Part Account Group under Account Group business component. The "Maintain Part Account Group" page appears. *See Figure 2.3*.
- 2. Enter the Part Account Group and Account Group Description in the Search Criteria group box

## ramco

	2								
*	D, I	Associate Parts					44 4 1 2 3 4 5 <b>b</b> bb	1 /13 📰 🎜 🖶 🛱	← ? ⊡
	earcl	Criteria							
			Part #				Reference Status	T	
			Part Description				Part Type Expendable	<b>v</b>	
				Consumables			Associated? Yes V		
				Consumables	<b>•</b>			_	
			Part Group				Part Category	•	
		<b>D</b>			Search				
	earci	Results							
44	( <u> </u>	1 - 10 / 41 🕨 🕨	+ 🗇 🌣 🔍 T Tx					•	Q
#		Part #	Part Description	Part Type	Part Account Group		Account Group Description	Issue Basis	Exp
1		34234	324234	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
2		TEST NEW	test	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
3		REGNONEPART001	REG NONE PART	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
4		ROUND2-EXP	ROUND2-Exp	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
5		0012345	0012345	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
6		MN:CR:0078	ice detector	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
7		GZ	fg	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
8		P1	yftjhtdrt	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
9		CONLOTPART001	CONSUMEABLE LOT PART	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
10		10973KITCONST1	10973KITCONST1	Expendable	Consumables	~	Consumables	Non-Returnable	Rev
		4	·						Þ
A:	isoci	te all selected parts t	o Account Group						
			E Se	lect All			Part Account Group	r	
					Associate Part	s			

#### Figure 2.3 Maintaining part account group

- 3. Set the **Status** of the part account group as "Active" or "Inactive". Set the status as "Inactive" only when you wish to disable the part account group from future reference in other activities.
- 4. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the details based on the search criteria.

#### To modify the part account group details

- 5. Enter the Part Account Group and Account Group Description in the Part Account Group Details multiline.
- 6. Select the **Status** as "Activate" or "Inactivate".
- 7. Click the Maintain Part Account Groups pushbutton to update the modified details. To provide further details,
- 8. Select the **Associate Part Account Group to Parts** link to associate parts to part account group.

#### 2.1.4 ASSOCIATING PARTS TO ACCOUNT GROUP

You can associate a part to a part account group that is already defined.

1. Select Associate Parts to Account Group under Account Group business component. The "Associate Parts" page appears. See Figure 2.4.

-5	earch	Criteria				Date Format dd/	mm/yyyy	
		Supplier Account Grou	p			Status Ac	tive 💌	
		Account Group Descriptio	n					
				Search				
S	uppli	er Account Group Details						
Ŀ	0	1 - 10 / 15 🕨 🕨 🕂 🗇 🔅 🝸 🗅	T <sub>x</sub>				All	▼
		Supplier Account Group	Account Group Description	Status		Created by	Created Date	Last Modified by
		INTERCO	INTERCO	Active	*	DMUSER	07/11/2011	DMUSER
		TRADE	TRADE	Active	*	DMUSER	07/11/2011	DMUSER
		EMP	Employees	Active	~	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		FOR	Foreign Currency Vendor	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		PO	PO Vendor	Active	~	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		CORP	Corporate Vendor	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		EMPLOYEE	Employees	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		SAGDM	sagdm	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		SAGUT	sagut	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
)		SAG01	sag01	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
		4						÷

#### Figure 2.4 Associating parts to account group

2. Enter the **Part #** and/or other search criteria in the **Search Criteria** group box.



3. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the details.

#### Modifying the already associated part and part account group details

- 4. Enter the modified Part #, Part Description and Part Type in the Search Results multiline.
- 5. Select the Part Account Group to which the parts displayed in the multiline, is to be associated.

#### Associating all the selected parts to account group

- 6. Check the **Select All** box to select all the parts listed in the multiline to associate with a part account group.
- 7. Select the **Part Account Group** to which all the parts must be associated.
- 8. Click the **Associate Parts** pushbutton to associate the parts.

#### 2.1.5 MAINTAINING SUPPLIER ACCOUNT GROUP

You can create and maintain Supplier account group to one or more Suppliers depending on the business requirements.

1. Select **Maintain Supplier Account Group** under **Account Group** business component. The **"Maintain Supplier Account Group**" page appears. *See Figure 2.5.* 

-Sear	rch Criteria				Date Format dd/mm,	(YYYY	
	Supplier Account Grou	p			Status Active	V	
	Account Group Descriptio	n					
			Search				
Sup	oplier Account Group Details						
•	1 - 10 / 15 > >> + 🗇 🔅 🕆 🗎	τ,				All 🔻	Q
E	Supplier Account Group	Account Group Description	Status		Created by	Created Date	Last Modified by
1	INTERCO	INTERCO	Active	~	DMUSER	07/11/2011	DMUSER
8	TRADE	TRADE	Active	*	DMUSER	07/11/2011	DMUSER
1	EMP EMP	Employees	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	FOR FOR	Foreign Currency Vendor	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	PO PO	PO Vendor	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	CORP	Corporate Vendor	Active	~	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	EMPLOYEE	Employees	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	SAGDM	sagdm	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
E	SAGUT SAGUT	sagut	Active	~	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
0 8	SAG01	sag01	Active	*	DMUSER	14/12/2015	DMUSER
	4						+

#### Figure 2.5 Maintaining supplier account group

- 2. Provide search criteria to search for the supplier account group and click the **Search** pushbutton.
- 3. In the multiline, enter the **Supplier Account Group** and the Account Group Description.
- 4. Use the Status drop-down list box to set the status of the supplier account group as "Active" or "Inactive".
- 5. Click the Maintain Supplier Account Groups to save the supplier account groups.

#### 2.1.6 ASSOCIATE SUPPLIERS TO ACCOUNT GROUP

You can associate suppliers to the supplier account group. You can search for the supplier and associate a supplier account group to the supplier listed.

1. Select **Associate Suppliers** to Account Group under the **Account Group** business component. The **"Associate Suppliers**" page appears. *See Figure 2.6.* 



	Associate Parts								国は咖口+	? 🗔
Searc	ch Criteria									
		Pa	rt #			Reference	ce Status	•		
		Part Descrip	tion			F	Part Type	•		
		Part Account Gr	oup			Asi	sociated?	Ŧ		
		Part Gr	oup	•		Part	Category	•		
					Searc	h				
Searc	ch Results									
4	1 - 10 / 500 🕨	» + 0 0 C T T						III AI	•	Q
		Part Description	Part Type	Part Account Group		Account Group Description		Issue Basis	Expense Type	
	ADRIAN:35895	Lord Krishna	Consumable	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Revenue	
	767C0000-02:F1958	PNEU. TEMP SENSOR	Component	Rotables	~	Rotables		Core Returnable	Capital	
	BEN-NATE07:F9111	TRANSISTOR	Consumable	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Revenue	
	CL-CN-01:81205	CONSUMABLE for SCM-	Consumable	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Revenue	
	CL-CR-01:81205	Component Rotable for CL -	Component	Rotables	~	Rotables		Core Returnable	Capital	
	CL-CR-02-ALT:81205	COMPONENT FOR SCM-	Component	Repairables	~	Repairables		Non-Returnable	Capital	
	CL-CR-02:81205	Component for SCM-INV-	Component	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Capital	
	CL-CR-11:81205	TEST AUAV-5065	Component	Rotables	~	Rotables		Non-Returnable	Capital	
	0154DB5:04274	P2T2 INLET PROBE	Consumable	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Revenue	
	0-001-368-016:35895	est	Consumable	Consumables	~	Consumable		Non-Returnable	Revenue	
										•

#### Figure 2.6 Associating suppliers to account group

- 2. Provide search criteria to search for the supplier and click the **Search** pushbutton.
- 3. Use the **Supplier Account Group** drop-down list box, in the multiline to select the supplier account group with which you want to associate the supplier. The system lists all the supplier account groups that are in the "Active" status.

#### Associating all the selected suppliers to account group.

- 4. Check the **Select All** box to select all the suppliers listed in the multiline for association with the supplier group.
- 5. Select the **Part Account Group** to which all the suppliers must be associated.
- 6. Click the **Associate Suppliers** pushbutton to associate the supplier with the account groups.

#### 2.1.7 MAINTAINING CUSTOMER ACCOUNT GROUP

You can create and maintain customer account group to one or more customers depending on the business requirements.

1. Select Maintain Customer Account Group under Account Group business component. The "Maintain Customer Account Group" page appears. See Figure 2.7.

	)	Maintain Customer Account Group						≣ >‡ f			
		Criteria					Date Format yyyy-dd-mm				
-Sea	ircn	Customer Accour	t Group Status Active			Account	Group Description				
Sea	ırch	Results		Search							
4 4		1 -7/7 > >> + = 0 ≠ 0 0	T T					1	Ŧ		Q
r   I	8	Customer Account Group	Account Group Description	Status		Created by	Created Date	Last Modified by		Las	t Modified L
		INTERCO	INTERCO	Active	~	DMUSER	2011-07-11	DMUSER		201	1-07-11
		TRADE	TRADE	Active	~	DMUSER	2011-07-11	DMUSER		201	1-07-11
		DOHA AVIATION	Doha Aviation	Active	~	DMUSER	2015-27-08	DMUSER		201	5-27-08
		DOHA ACCOMODATION	Doha Accomodation	Active	*	DMUSER	2015-27-08	DMUSER		201	5-27-08
		UK	uk	Active	~	DMUSER	2015-27-08	DMUSER		201	5-27-08
		IRAN	Iran	Active	~	DMUSER	2015-27-08	DMUSER		201	5-27-08
		BELINCO	Bedek Lingyun (Yichang) A/c Maintenance Engineering Co. Ltd.	Active	~	DMUSER	2016-13-04	DMUSER		201	6-13-04
					~						
		4									•
				Maintain Account Groups							

#### Figure 2.7 Maintaining customer account group

- 2. Provide search criteria to search for the customer account group and click the **Search** pushbutton.
- 3. In the multiline, enter the **Customer Account Group** and the **Account Group** Description.

- 4. Use the **Status** drop-down list box to set the status of the customer account group as "Active" or "Inactive".
- 5. Click the Maintain Customer Account Groups to save the customer account groups.

#### 2.1.8 ASSOCIATE CUSTOMERS TO ACCOUNT GROUP

You can associate customers to the customer account group. You can search for the customer and associate a customer account group to the customer listed.

1. Select Associate Customers to Account Group under the Account Group business component. The "Associate Customers" page appears. See Figure 2.8.

Sea		Criteria	Customer # Customer Account Group Associated?	Search	Custome Account Group Des Reference	cription	
	T	1 - 10 / 248 + ++	+ 0 0 C T T.				Q
e		Customer #	Customer Name	Reference Status	Customer Account Group	Account Group Description	
		046	Customer 1	Under Creation	~		
		2010A7P5046G	Customer 6	Under Creation	~		
		AC000005-2015	Customer 208	Under Creation	*		
		AC000006-2015	Customer 209	Under Creation	*		
		AC000014-2015	DF	Under Creation	·		
		AC000016-2015	FH	Under Creation	*		
		AC000017-2015	SS	Under Creation	~		_
		AC000018-2015	TESTSANDHYA	Under Creation	*		
		AC000024-2015	CUSTOMER	Under Creation	~		
0		AC000028-2015	RAMCO	Under Creation	·		-

#### Figure 2.8 Associating customers to account group

- 2. Provide search criteria to search for the customer and click the Search pushbutton.
- 3. Use the **Customer Account Group** drop-down list box, in the multiline to select the customer account group with which you want to associate the customer. The system lists all the customer account groups that are in the "Active" status.

#### Associating all the selected customers to account group

- 4. Check the Select All box to select all the customers listed in the multiline for association with the customer group.
- 5. Select the Part Account Group to which all the customers must be associated.
- 6. Click the Associate Customers pushbutton to associate the customer with the account groups.



#### Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 2 – Account Definition

S.	Flow of Events	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
<b>No</b>	Operative Chart of Accounts ID Account Creation	Accounting Setup	Create Operative COA	<u>Create</u> <u>Operativ€OA</u> ID	1. Create Operative COA ID along with description
		Accounting Setup	Create Operative COA	<u>Create</u> Operativ€OA	<ol> <li>Select COA ID</li> <li>Create posting account code, description and set properties.</li> <li>Map account codes to</li> </ol>
2.	Attach Operative COA to Company	Accounting Setup	Attach / Copy Operative COA to Company	Select Operative Account code to Attach / Copy	1. Select either few account codes or the entire COA
		Accounting Setup	Attach / Copy Operative COA ID to Company	Attach / Detach Account Code to Company	<ol> <li>Select the companies defined in the installation</li> <li>Select "Attach" option in the Action field</li> <li>Give the same COA ID and description</li> </ol>
3.	Copy Operative COA to Company Edit Accounts	Accounting Setup	Attach / Copy Operative COA to Company	Select Operative Account Code to Attach / Copy	1. Select either few account codes or the entire COA
		Accounting Setup	Attach / Copy Operative COA to Company	Attach / Detach Account Code to Company	<ol> <li>Select the companies defined in the installation</li> <li>Select "Copy" option in the Action field</li> <li>Give a unique COA ID and description</li> <li>If account currency is to be converted to the base currency of the company, use the check box (Optional)</li> </ol>



4.	Reporting Chart of Accounts ID Account Creation	Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	<u>Create</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u> ID	1. Create COA ID along with description for various types
		Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	<u>Create</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u> <u>ID</u>	<ol> <li>Select Reporting COA ID</li> <li>Create Reporting Account Code, Level, Description and set properties</li> </ol>
5.	Reporting Chart of Accounts ID Account Creation Attach Reporting COA after creation	Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	<u>Create</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u>	1. Select either few account codes or the entire COA
		Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	<u>Attach</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u>	1. Select companies defined in the installation
6.	Reporting COA ID Account Creation Copy Reporting COA Edit Reporting COA after creation	Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	<u>Copy Reportig</u> <u>COA</u>	<ol> <li>Select the companies defined in the installation</li> <li>Give a unique COA ID and description</li> </ol>
7.	Attach Reporting COA to companies (subsequently)	Accounting Setup	Attach / Detach Reporting COA	<u>Attach / Detach</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u>	<ol> <li>Select the COA ID</li> <li>Select the companies defined in the installation</li> <li>Give the same COA ID and description</li> </ol>
8.	Copy Reporting COA (subsequently)	Accounting Setup	Attach / Detach Reporting COA	<u>Attach / Detach</u> <u>Reporti<b>g</b> COA</u>	<ol> <li>Select the COA ID</li> <li>Select the companies defined in the installation</li> <li>Give a unique COA ID and description</li> </ol>



9.	Mapping Posting Account Codes after creation of Reporting COA	Accounting Setup	Create Reporting COA	Attach Postig Accounts to Reportig COA	<ol> <li>Select reporting COA ID</li> <li>Select operative COA ID</li> <li>Retrieve the posting account codes based on the search criteria and map to the lowest level reporting account</li> </ol>
10.	Mapping Posting Account Codes (subsequently)	Accounting Setup	Attach / Detach Posting Account Code to Reporting COA	Attach / Detach Posting account Code to reportingOA	<ol> <li>Select reporting COA ID</li> <li>Select operative COA ID</li> <li>Retrieve the reporting account codes based on the search criteria.</li> <li>Retrieve the posting account codes based on the search criteria and map to the lowest level reporting account</li> </ol>
11.	Create Financial Calendar	Accounting Setup	Create Calendar	<u>Create</u> <u>Financial</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter year code, description, start date and end date</li> <li>Select frequency for period and compute periods (if frequency is selected as "Customize" then the user has to define the period end dates)</li> <li>Mark legacy periods as "Yes"</li> </ol>
12.	Attach Financial Calendar after creation	Accounting Setup	Create Calendar	<u>Create</u> <u>Financial</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter year code, description, start date and end date</li> <li>Select frequency for period and compute periods (if frequency is selected as "Customize" then the user has to define the period end dates)</li> <li>Mark legacy periods as "Yes"</li> </ol>
		Accounting Setup	Create Calendar	<u>Attach</u> <u>Financial</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Select the year code</li> <li>Select the company and attach</li> </ol>
13.	Attach Financial Calendar (subsequently)	Accounting Setup	Attach/Detach Calendar	<u>Attach / Detach</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Select the year type as financial year</li> <li>Select the year code</li> <li>Select the company and attach</li> </ol>
14.	Detach Financial Calendar	Accounting Setup	Attach / Detach Calendar	<u>Attach / Detach</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Select the year type as "Financial Year"</li> <li>Select the year code</li> <li>Select the company and detach</li> </ol>



15.	Maintain Posting Rule - Include	Accounting Setup	Maintain Posting Rule	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Posti<b>g</b> Rule</u>	<ol> <li>Select the journal voucher type</li> <li>If the rule is to be set at account level, execute search and set the rule (Include) after entering the effective date.</li> <li>If the rule is to be set at the account property level, set the rule (Include) after entering the effective date</li> </ol>
16.	Maintain Posting Rule – Exclude	Accounting Setup	Maintain Posting Rule	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Posti<b>g</b> Rule</u>	<ol> <li>Select the journal voucher type</li> <li>If the rule is to be set at Account level, execute search and set the Rule (Exclude) after entering the effective date.</li> <li>If the rule is to be set at the account property level, set the rule (Exclude) after entering the effective date</li> </ol>

## **2.2 ACCOUNT DEFINITION**

Accounting Setup process includes creation of the financial calendar, operative COA and the reporting COA. If a tax book is applicable for the company then a tax calendar can also be created. Apart from this rules can also be set for posting journal vouchers (JV) in the "Posting" FB, "Main" FB, "Consolidation" FB and "Tax" FB of the company.

#### 2.2.1 CREATE OPERATING CHART OF ACCOUNTS ID

This sequence describes the process of creating an operative chart of accounts ID. This ID created is unique for the installation and account codes are defined for this chart of accounts ID.

* 🗎 Create Operative Chart of Account ID				≣ <i>≍</i> ;	-	4	+	? [	0 1
Chart of Accounts ID COA1200			Description Charge Suspense						
		Create ID							
Create Operative Chart of Accounts	Attach Notes								
Created by			Created Date						

#### Figure 2.9 Create Operative COA ID

- 1. The "Create Operating Chart of Accounts ID" page is launched. See Figure 2.9.
- 2. Enter the Chart of **Account ID** and **Description**.
- 3. Click the **Create ID** pushbutton to save the COA ID details.

#### 2.2.2 CREATE OPERATING CHART OF ACCOUNTS

This sequence elaborates the process of defining an operative chart of accounts for a company. An *Operative Chart of Accounts* represents a structure that consists of various account codes through which transactions can be recorded.

* 🗈	Create Operative Cl	nart of Accounts								≣ <i>≍</i> ;	Ē	+ '	? [	¢ K
Acco	Chart of Accounts	ID 01245 💌		Description account for finnace					Status	Active				
44 4	[No records to display]				А		#	÷ III	All		Ŧ			Q
# E		Automatic Posting Account Type		Effective Period From		Effective Period To			Consolida	tion Account (	Code			
1 8	•		*	02/02/2016										
	•													•
		Upload Account Code					Creat	te Accour	nt Code					
		Assign Analysis Code				Map Norma	al / All	ocation Co	st Elements					

#### Figure 2.10 Create Operative COA

- 1. The "Create Operating Chart of Accounts" page is launched. See Figure 2.10.
- 2. Select the **Chart of Accounts ID** in the header for which the accounts have to be defined.
- 3. Enter the Posting Account Code, Description, Effective Period From and Effective Period To in the multiline.
- 4. Select the account properties like Currency, Account Group, Account Classification, Control Account Type, **Automatic Posting Account Type** and **Layout heading**.
  - Note: The Account Group, Account Classification, Control Account Type, Automatic Posting Account combination must be a valid for the given automatic posting account type.
- 5. Enter the **Consolidation Account Code** if the posting account code must be mapped to a consolidation chart of accounts that have already been defined.
- 6. Click the **Create Account Code** pushbutton to create the operative COA.
- 7. Click the Upload Account Code pushbutton to upload the COA to Excel format

#### 2.2.3 SELECT OPERATIVE ACCOUNT CODE TO ATTACH / COPY

Account codes that have been defined for a parent company can be attached / copied to the subsidiary companies. This sequence explains the process of selecting operative COA to be attached or copied.

* 🔋 Select Operative Account Code to Attach	Сору				■ # ● ☆ ← 3	
Chart of Accounts ID 01245		Description account	t for finnace		Status Active	
Account Code from Description Layout Heading		Account 0	To roup ASSET V		Currency CAD V	
Automatic Posting Account Type Control Account Type Account Classification	<b>v</b>					
Consolidation Account Code					Search	
- Search Results						
	ian (11	rrency Accourt		L U X ⊆ E F = II AI Account Classification	Control Account Type	Q
1 0123654 Account			0,000	BALANCE SHEET	control Account Type	_
4						Þ
Attach/Copy Account code to Company						-

#### Figure 2.11 Select Operative COA to Attach / Copy

- 1. The "Select Operative Account Code to Attach / Copy" page is launched. See Figure 2.11.
- 2. Select the Chart of Accounts ID in the header that needs to be attached / copied.
- 3. Use the search criteria, like Account Code From and Account Code To, Account Group, Layout Heading, Account Classification, Auto Posting Account Type, Control Account Type or Consolidation Account Code to get the details of the accounts for that range.
- 4. Use blank search criteria to retrieve all the account details.
- 5. Select specific or all **Account Code** in the multiline to be attached / copied.

#### 2.2.4 ATTACH / DETACH ACCOUNT CODES TO COMPANY

#### Attach Account Code

This sequence describes the process of attaching the selected operative COA to subsidiary or child companies. While attaching a chart of accounts to a company, the original chart of accounts ID is retained. This value cannot be modified.

* 🗎	Attach / Copy Account code to C	Company			= x	ē ₽ <	-? 🗔 🛛
- Chart	Chart of Accour Convert Account Currency to Base Cur : of Accounts Information		Description abc		Status Active		
44 4	1 - 3/3 > >> + = 🗆 🗲 🛇	Q Y Y			I) Al	T	Q
# 8	Company Name	Parent	Chart of Accounts ID	Description	Action		Main Finance Bo
1	CB Airways		123456	abc	Attach	~	ELIMINATION
2	Able Engineering	AVEOS	ABLE1	ABLE Eng.	Attach	~	ABLEMFB
3	Execute To Win	AVEOS	EXE	EXE 2 WIN	Attach	~	EXEMFB
4					Attach	*	
ttach Note	•	Atach/ Copy Account Code		Detach Ac			

#### Figure 2.12 Attach / Copy Account Code to Company

- 1. The "Attach/Copy Account Code to Company" page is launched. See Figure 2.12.
- 2. Select the **Company Name** in the multiline to which the COA is to be attached.
- 3. Enter the same **Chart of Accounts ID** and **Description** in the multiline as given in the header.
- 4. Set the Action as "Attach".



- 5. Click the **Attach / Copy Account Code** pushbutton to attach the account codes to the selected companies.
- 6. Click the **Detach Account Code** pushbutton to detach the account codes from the selected companies.

#### **Copy Account Code**

This sequence describes the process of copying the selected operative COA to subsidiary or child companies.

- 1. The "Attach/Copy Account Code to Company" page is launched. See Figure 2.12.
- 2. Select the **Company Name** in the multiline to which the COA is to be attached.
- 3. Enter a **Chart of Accounts ID** and Description different from the one in the header.
- 4. Set the Action as "Copy".
- 5. Check **Convert Account Currency** to **Base Currency** if the base currency of the company to which the COA is to be attached is different from the currency in which the accounts are defined.
- 6. Click the Attach/Copy Account Code pushbutton to attach the account codes to the selected companies.

#### 2.2.5 CREATE REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS ID

This sequence elaborates the process of creating a reporting chart of accounts ID. This ID is usually defined at the company or group company level. Account codes are defined for this chart of accounts ID.

★		■ x ● C ← ? C
Chart of Accounts ID 30003 Country	Description	Chart of Accounts Type COUNTRY SPECIFIC
	Create ID	
Create Reporting Chart of Accounts	Attach Notes	
Created by		Created Date

#### Figure 2.13 Create Reporting Chart of Accounts ID

- 1. The "Create Reporting Chart of Accounts ID" page is launched. See Figure 2.13.
- 2. Enter the Chart of Accounts ID and Description.
- 3. Select **Chart of Accounts Type** as "Industry specific", "Country Specific" Or "Multilevel" and enter the Country.
- 4. Click the Create ID pushbutton to save the reporting COA ID details.

#### 2.2.6 CREATE REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS

This sequence explains the process of creating a reporting COA. A *Reporting Chart of Accounts* allows interpretation of important financial information of a company by logically grouping the various accounts to which postings are made.

- 1. The "Create Reporting Chart of Accounts" page is launched. See Figure 2.14.
- 2. Select the Chart of Accounts ID in the header for which the accounts have to be defined

Attach Reporting Chart of Accounts

6	8	Book Keeping								ra	mc
r	D	Create Reporting Chart of Account	ts							겨 를 다	← ? ⊡
		Chart of Accounts ID 5 💌			Description SS				Status Active		
		Country SE		Chart of	Accounts Type COUNTRY SPECIFI	5					
	_								AL	<b>v</b>	Q
	_	1 -1/1 → → + = □ ↔ Q =	Account Level	Parent Account Code	Description		Currency	Account Group	All	Account Classifica	
			Account Level	Parent Account Code	Description						
		SMG OPCOA						ASSET		BALANCE SHEET BALANCE SHEET	
		4									•
					Create Account Code						
					Create Account Code						
0	perat	ive Account Code Mapping									
		Operative Chart of Accounts ID 123456 💌			Description abc						
s	earch	Criteria									
		Account Code from			То	-			Currency CAD 🔻		
		Description Layout Heading		T	Account Group ALL	¥					
		Control Account Type All	v	•							
		Account Classification All									
		Auto Posting Account Type All		Ŧ							
		Consolidation Account Code							Search		
									bearer		
5	earch	Results									
44	4	1 - 4 / 4 🕨 🕨 🍸 📆				<u>له ا</u>			All	T	Q
#		Posting Account Code	Description	Currency	Account Group	Account Classification		Consolio	dation Account Code		Effective
1		001	Charge Suspense	CAD	LIABILITIES	BALANCE SHEET					2016-01-
2		1001002	CHARGE SUSPENSE	CAD	LIABILITIES	BALANCE SHEET					2016-01-
3		109902	Freight Expenses	CAD	EXPENSES	INCOME STATEMENT					2016-01-
4		TAX	taxable	CAD	EXPENSES	INCOME STATEMENT					2016-01-
		4									
											•

#### Figure 2.14 Create Reporting Chart of Accounts

3. Enter the account properties like Account Code, Account Level, Parent Account Code, Description, Currency, Account Group and Account Classification.

Attach Account Code

4. Click the Create Account Code pushbutton to create the account codes.

Copy Reporting Chart of Accounts

#### 2.2.7 ATTACH REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS (IMMEDIATELY AFTER CREATION)

Reporting chart of accounts is created individually and then assigned to a company. This sequence describes this process. The company to which a chart of account has been attached cannot modify the details of the attached chart of account.

*		Attach Reporting Chart of Accour	its					≣ <i>X</i> ;	ē	3 +	?	
-	Chart	Chart of Accounts ID 5 of Accounts Information		Description SS			Status Ac	tive				
44	4	1-3/3 > >> - T T.					All		Ŧ			Q
#		Company Name	Parent	Main Finance Book ID								
1		Able Engineering	CB Airways	ABLEMFB								
2		CB Airways		ELIMINATION								
з		Execute To Win	CB Airways	EXEMFB								
L –												
				Attach								
Atta	Attach Notes											
_										_		

#### Figure 2.15 Attach Reporting COA

- The "Attach Reporting Chart of Accounts" page is launched. See Figure 2.15. 1.
- Select the **Company Name** in the multiline to which the reporting COA ID has to be attached. 2.
- Click the Attach pushbutton to attach reporting COA to companies 3.

#### 2.2.8 COPY REPORTING CHART OF ACCOUNTS (IMMEDIATELY AFTER CREATION)

Reporting chart of accounts that has been created can be copied to other companies. This sequence describes this process.



												_	
*		Copy Reporting Chart of Accounts					12	] _/‡	ē		- ?	6	ĸ
-												_	-
		Chart of Accounts ID 5		Description SS			Status Active						
-	Chart	of Accounts Information											
44	4	1-3/3 > >> + = 🗗 🗲 🔕 🖏 🕇 T,					 Al				_	_	Q
#		Company Name	Parent		Chart of Accounts ID	Description		Main F	nance E	Book ID			
1		Able Engineering	CB Airways					ABLEM	FB				
2		CB Airways						ELIMIN	IATION				
3		Execute To Win	CB Airways					EXEMP	в				
4													
		4											•
-												_	_
				Сору									
Attac	h Note												

#### Figure 2.16 Copy Reporting COA

- 1. The "Copy Reporting Chart of Accounts" page is launched. See Figure 2.16.
- 2. Select the Company Name in the multiline to which the reporting COA ID has to be copied.
- 3. Enter the **Chart of Accounts ID** and **Description** different from the one in the header.
- 4. Click the **Copy** pushbutton to copy reporting COA to companies.

# 2.2.9 ATTACH / DETACH POSTING ACCOUNT CODE TO REPORTING ACCOUNT CODE (SUBSEQUENT TO CREATION OF REPORTING COA)

This sequence explains the process of attaching or detaching posting account codes to reporting COA subsequent to its creation. This is done by selecting an operating COA and retrieving account codes based on it. The retrieved posting account codes are then mapped to the reporting COA.

*		Attach/Detach Posting Ac	ccount to Reporting Chart of A	Accounts							자 등	4	<b>← ?</b> [
	Soarc	Chart of Accounts ID 5 Chart of Accounts Type 6 Chart of Accounts Type 6			Description SS Country SE				Status	Active			
		Account Code from Description Parent Account Code		A	To Account Group AS account Classification BA				Currency Account Level	All  C C Search			
		h Results											
44		No records to display] 🕨 🗰						1	1		•	1	Q
#		Account Code	Account Level	Parent Account Code	Descri	iption		Currency	Account	Group		Acco	unt Classification
_		tive Account Code Mapping Operative Chart of Accounts ID 1 1 Criteria Account Code from	123456		Description abo	то			Curren	cy CAD V			
		Description Layout Heading		T	Account 0				Curren	cy one -			
	,	Control Account Type Account Classification Automatic Posting Account Type Consolidation Account Code	¥	v	A	ction 💌				Search			
	-	n Results											
-	•	1 - 3/3 • •• <b>T</b>	Duratefin	0	4					- 4	Ŧ		Q
#		Posting Account Code 001	Description Charge Suspense	Currency	Account Group	Account Cla BALANCE S		Consolic	lation Account C	oae			2016-01-
2			Freight Expenses	CAD	EXPENSES	INCOME ST							2016-01-
3		TAX	taxable	CAD	EXPENSES	INCOME ST							2016-01-
_		4	Attach Account Code		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			ch Account Co	10				•
			Actach Account Code				Deta	In Account Co	ie.				

Figure 2.17 Attach / Detach Posting Account to Reporting Chart of Accounts

- 1. The "Attach / Detach Posting Account to Reporting Chart of Accounts" page is launched. See Figure 2.17.
- 2. Select the **Chart of Accounts ID** in the header and execute the search to retrieve Account Code and the corresponding details.

- 3. Select the lowest level reporting account codes in the multiline to which the Operating accounts codes are to be attached.
- 4. Select the Operating Chart of Accounts ID and execute the search to retrieve Posting Account Code.
- 5. Select the posting accounts from the multiline.
- 6. Click the Attach Account Code pushbutton to attach the posting account codes to reporting COA.
- 7. Click the **Detach Account Code** pushbutton to detach the posting account codes from the reporting COA.

#### 2.2.10 CREATE FINANCIAL CALENDAR

This sequence elucidates the process of creating a financial calendar and attaching it to other companies defined in the installation. A financial calendar is usually defined at the company level and is to cater to the needs of publishing financial statements periodically for monitoring the financial status of the company.

*	Create Financi	ial Calendar											<b></b>	: 1		+	?	[0
	Co Financial year Details	ompany Name CB Airways									9	Status						
		Start Date 2017-01-01	m		Descriptio End Dat			(1)										
		Frequency CUSTOMIZE	•										Compute F	Period:	5			
- F	inancial Period Details																	
••	[No records to displate	w] <b>→ → + =</b> □	* 0 0 T T						XCM	x) 🖡 🖷	II AI			Ŧ				Q
#	Financial Period C	Code	Description	Start Date	Er	d Date	Legacy Da	te										
1							NO										~	
_						Create												
Attach	Financial Calendar			Create Tax Calendar					Attach Note	5								
_		Created by									Creation	n Date						

#### Figure 2.18 Create Financial Calendar

- 1. The "Create Financial Calendar" page is launched. See Figure 2.18.
- 2. Enter the financial year details like **Financial Year Code**, **Description**, **Start Date** and **End Date** in the header and select the **Frequency**.
- 3. Click the **Compute Periods** pushbutton to default the start date and end date of the financial periods in the multiline based on the frequency.
  - Note: If the frequency is selected as "Customized" then enter the required End Date in the multiline against each period.
- 4. Enter the Financial Period Code and Description in the multiline.
- 5. Set the **Legacy Date** to "Yes" or "No" for each financial period.
- 6. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the calendar.

#### 2.2.11 ATTACH FINANCIAL CALENDAR

This sequence explains the process of attaching financial calendars immediately after creating it. Since financial calendars are defined at the company level, it is attached to companies only.



* 🗎 Attach Finance Calendar					i z	. 8		· ?	6	ĸ
Company Name CB Airways				Year Status	Active					
Financial year Details Financial Year Code F2014 F201		Description F2014								
Start Date 2014-01-01		End Date 2014-31-12								
		Lind Date 2014-51-12								
Attach to Company										
44 4 1 - 2/2 → → = T T.			# # II	All			•			ρ
# Company Name	Main Finance Book ID									
1 🗇 Able Engineering	ABLEMFB									
2 Execute To Win	EXEMFB									
		Attach Financial Calendar								-
Attach Notes										

#### Figure 2.19 Attach Financial Calendar

- 1. The "Attach Financial Calendar" page is launched. See Figure 2.19.
- 2. Select a **Financial Year code** in the header that is to be attached.
- 3. Select a Company Name from the multiline to which the financial calendar is to be attached.
- 4. Click Attach Financial Calendar pushbutton to attach calendar selected companies.

#### 2.2.12 ATTACH / DETACH CALENDAR

This sequence explains the process of attaching or detaching financial calendars to/from a company.

★ 🗻 Attach/Detach Calendar															
Company Name CB Airways															
Year Financial Year V	F	inancial / Tax Year Code FY11 💌	c	escription Financial Year 2011											
Status Active		Start Date 2011-01-01		End Date 2011-31-12											
#     1     -2/2     >>>     >>>     T     T     T       #     I     Company Name     Main Tax Book ID     Status															
1 🖾 Able Engineering	ABLEMFB	Attach													
2 🖾 Execute To Win	EXEMFB	Attach													
Attach Calendar Detach Calendar															
Attach Notes	Notes														

#### Figure 2.20 Attach / Detach Calendar

- 1. The "Attach / Detach Calendar" page is launched. See Figure 2.20.
- 2. Select the **Year** as "Financial Year" in the header.
- 3. Select the Financial / Year Code in the header.
- 4. Select the Company Name in the multiline.
- 5. Click the Attach Calendar pushbutton to attach the calendar to the company.
- 6. Click the **Detach Calendar** pushbutton to detach the calendar from the company

#### 2.2.13 MAINTAIN POSTING RULE

This process explains the process of setting the combination of account properties for which journal vouchers can be passed in the "Posting" finance book, "Main" finance book, "Tax" book or the "Consolidation" finance book of a company. This has to be done because posting to journal vouchers for any predefined account property combination is not allowed by default.



Search Ci	Journal voucher Type Positin	G BOOK JV 🛛 🔻		Effective From Date 20	11-01-01				
ocuren ei									
	Account Code from			То		Status All	*		
						Search			
Exception	n Details								
	1-6/6 <b>&gt; &gt;&gt; + - 0 </b> < 4	O T T					<b>v</b>		£
	Account Classification	Account Group		Control Account Type	Automatic Posting Account Type	Account Code	5	tatus	
B	BALANCE SHEET	✓ ASSET	~	*		~	E	cluded	
B	BALANCE SHEET	✓ CAPITAL	*	*		*	E	cluded	
B	BALANCE SHEET	✓ LIABILITIES	*	*		*	E	cluded	
	NCOME STATEMENT	<ul> <li>EXPENSES</li> </ul>	~	*		~	E	cluded	
	NCOME STATEMENT	✓ REVENUE	~	*		*	E	cluded	
R	RETAINED EARNINGS	✓ CAPITAL	*	*		*	E	cluded	
B	ALANCE SHEET	<ul> <li>ASSET</li> </ul>	*	*		*			

#### Figure 2.21 Maintain Posting Rule

- 1. The "Maintain Posting Rule" page is launched. See Figure 2.21.
- 2. Select the **Journal Voucher Type** in the header for which the accounts are to be included or excluded and enter the Effective From Date.
- 3. Enter Account Code From, To and Status and execute search to retrieve account codes.
- 4. Select the accounts in the multiline, which are to be included or excluded.
- 5. Click the **Include** pushbutton to include the accounts.
- 6. Click the **Exclude** pushbutton to exclude the accounts.

#### Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 3 – Bank / Cash / PTT Definition

S. No	Flow of Events	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1.	Creation of Bank Codes (Drawable Limit at Header Level)	Bank Cash Definition	Create Bank / Cash Definition	<u>Create Bank</u>	<ol> <li>2. Enter the bank reference, bank account number, credit limit and drawable limit at the header level.</li> <li>3. Create bank codes and map it to finance book.</li> </ol>
2.	Bank Balance Query	Bank Cash Definition	View Bank Cash Details	Select Bank	4. Execute search criteria to retrieve bank code and bank account number
				<u>View Bank</u>	<ol> <li>Select bank reference or bank account number from entry point page</li> <li>View bank balance for the bank code.</li> </ol>
3.	Bank Usage Information	Bank Cash Definition	Create Bank / Cash Details	<u>Create Bank</u> <u>Usage</u> <u>Informatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Select bank code</li> <li>Set the bank usage</li> </ol>
4.	Set Bank Charges	Bank Cash Definition	Set Bank Charges	<u>Set Bank</u> <u>Charges</u>	<ol> <li>Select the bank account number</li> <li>Set bank charges.</li> </ol>
5.	Inactivate Bank Codes	Bank cash Definition	Activate / Inactivate Bank / Cash Details	<u>Select Bank</u>	<ol> <li>Select bank reference or bank account number</li> <li>Activate / Inactivate bank.</li> </ol>
6.				<u>Activate /</u> <u>Inactivat8ank</u>	<ol> <li>Select the bank         reference or bank         account number from         entry point page</li> <li>Activate / Inactivate         bank account number</li> </ol>
7.	Creation Cash Codes	Bank Cash Definition	Create Bank Cash Definition	Create Cash Book Details	<ol> <li>Create cash code</li> <li>Map it to the finance book</li> </ol>

## 2.3 BANK / CASH / PTT DEFINITION

Any business transaction results in payment or receipt of funds. The payments and receipts can be made through "Bank", "Cash", "PTT" or "Electronic Fund Transfer".

#### 2.3.1 CREATE BANK

This sequence elaborates the process of capturing the essential bank details. This is a one-time activity and is used to capture the details of all the branches of a bank. The information captured in this screen can be retrieved while making payments or receiving receipts from vendors or customers using a file transfer mode.

★ 🎚 Create Bank								= x;		₽ ←	?	
Bank Reference Address 1			Bank Name	[			Status					_
City	Malaysia	•	State				zip					
Phone #			Fax				Telex					
E-Mail Bank Clearing #			Swift No.				Mailstop	<b>_</b>				
Bank Clearing #			Swift No.				Bank Type	•				
Bank Account No. Currency			Credit Limit				Drawable Limit					
<ul> <li>Electronic File Generation</li> </ul>												
Based on Supplier Bank Type Bank Book Details	T											
•• • [No records to display] • ••	+ 0 0 0 T T				人口		a II Al		•			Q
# Bank Code	Description		Map to Finance Book	Credit Limit		Drawable Limit	Over Draft An	nount		Effective I	Date for	Int
1 0			AVEOS	•								
4												•
												-
			Create	Bank								_
Create Cash Book Details Bank Usage Information		Create Bank C Attach Notes	Contact Details			Create File Transfer D	etails					
	Created by					Created Date						

#### Figure 2.22 Create Bank

- 1. The "Create Bank" page is launched. See Figure 2.22.
- 2. Enter the **Bank Reference**. The details of the bank reference entered in the "Organization Setup" will be retrieved.
- 3. Enter the Bank Account Information like Bank Account Number, Credit Limit and the Drawable Limit and select the **Currency**.
- 4. In the **Based on Supplier Bank Type** field of the **Electronic File Generation** group box, indicate whether the supplier bank type must be the basis for EFT payment. If this field is set to "Yes", individual pay vouchers are generated for every combination of Supplier, Pay-to Supplier, Pay Mode and, Supplier Bank Type fields. If this field is set to "No", individual pay vouchers are generated for every combination of Supplier, Pay-to Supplier
- 5. Enter the Bank Code and Description in the multiline with details like Credit Limit, Drawable Limit, Overdraft Amount, Effective Date for Interest Rate, Interest Rate for Overdraft Balance, Interest Rate for Cr Balance and Interest Rate for Dr Balance.
- 6. Map each of the Bank Code to Map to Finance Book in the multiline.
- 7. Select the details in the multiline for which **Bank Code** is entered.
- 8. Click the Create Bank pushbutton to save bank details.

#### 2.3.2 CREATE BANK USAGE INFORMATION

This sequence explains the process of saving bank usage information by which a bank can be referred in various processes of the application like: payments, receipts etc



★ 🗎 Bank Usage Information		« « 1 » » 1/1 ≣ ¤ ē ¤ ← ? ⊡ K
Bank Reference 5643	Bank Name ICICI	Bank Account No. 10008765
Bank Code ICICI	Description Bank	Finance Book AVEOS
Supplier Payments Yes 💌	Supplier Receipts Yes 💌	Sundry Payments Yes 💌
Customer Payment Yes 💌	Customer Receipts Yes 💌	Sundry Receipts Yes 💌
Payroll Yes 💌	Employee Receipts Yes 💌	
	Set Usage	

#### Figure 2.23 Create Bank Usage Information

- 1. The "Bank Usage Information" page is launched. See Figure 2.23.
- 2. For the selected Bank Code and Finance Book in the multiline, set the bank usage to "Yes" or "No" for the usages Supplier Payments, Supplier Receipts, Sundry Payments, Sundry Receipts, Customer Payment, Customer Receipts, Payroll and Employee Receipts.
- 3. Click the **Set Usage** pushbutton to set the bank usage information.

#### 2.3.3 SET BANK CHARGES

This sequence describes the process of setting bank charges for a company, which is set based on the charges type and pay mode. Bank charges can be set for charge currency and transaction currencies also.

Set Bank Charges							≣ X‡	ē ₽	+ 1	ĸ
Bank Reference P Pay Mode Transaction Currency Bank Charge Definition	Check  CAD	Eff	Bank Name Bank Charges Type LOCAL CHECK ective Date From	×	(F)	Bank Account No. Charge Currency		]		
(No records to display]      ********************************						🔻 🖮 💷 🗛		Ŧ		 Q
# Amount From	Amount To	Incremental Amount	Flat Charge	Percentage						
Minimum Charge		1	Maximum Charge			Miscellaneous Charge				_
			Set Bank Charges							
View Bank Charges										

#### Figure 2.24 Set Bank Charges

- 1. The "Set Bank Charges" page is launched. See Figure 2.24.
- 2. Enter the Bank Reference, Bank Account No and Effective Date From in the header.
- 3. Select the Pay Mode, Bank Charges Type, Charge Currency and Transaction Currency.
- 4. Enter the Amount From, Amount To and the Incremental Amount in the multiline.
- 5. Enter either the **Flat Charge** or the **Percentage** in each row.
- 6. Enter the Minimum Charge, Maximum Charge and the Miscellaneous Charge (if required).

#### 2.3.4 SELECT BANK DETAILS

This sequence elaborates the process of selecting "Active" bank details for inactivation and "Inactive" bank details for activation.



*		Select Bank					= 그 =	i¤ ← ?	0		
		Bank Reference		Bank A	ccount No.						
s	earch	Criteria Bank Reference Bank Code		1	Bank Name Status Active	Bani	k Account No.				
		Bank Code Effective Date From	2016-20-04		Status Active		Search				
s	earch	Results									
44	4	1 - 5 / 19 🕨 🗰 🝸 🏹					All	T	Q		
		Bank Reference	Bank Code	Bank Account No.	Bank Name	Bank Clearance No.	Swift No.	City			
1		1234	ASB	1234567	ICICI	456789		CHENNAI			
2		5643	ICICI	10008765	ICICI	12345678					
3		BMO CAD BLOCKED	BMO CAD BLOCKED	BMO CAD BLOCKED	AXIS BANK	000111259376	BOFMCAM2	Montreal			
4		BMO CAD CHEQUE	BMO CAD CHEQUE	BMO CAD CHEQUE	Bank of Montreal	8150101251446	BOFMCAM2	Montreal			
5		BMO CAD EFT	BMO CAD EFT	BMO CAD EFT	Bank of Montreal	000111259413	BOFMCAM2	Montreal			
	Activate Bank Inactivate Bank										
Activat	e/Inac	ctivate Cash Details		Activate/In:	activate Bank						

#### Figure 2.25 Select Bank Details

- 1. The "Select Bank" page is launched. See Figure 2.25.
- 2. Enter the Bank Reference and Bank Account No to be activated or inactivated.
- 3. Alternatively, use the search criteria to search for the bank details based on **Bank Reference**, **Bank Account No**, **Bank Name**, **Bank Code**, **Status** and **Effective Date From**.
- 4. Select the Active bank and click the Inactivate Bank pushbutton to inactivate the bank details.
- 5. Select the Inactive bank and click the **Activate Bank** pushbutton to activate the bank details.

#### 2.3.5 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE BANK CASH DETAILS

This sequence explains the process of activating or inactivating bank details or specific bank codes that has been mapped to a bank.

۲ 🗎	Activate/Inactivate Cash D	etails					비 자 을 다	← ? ि ि
		Status Active 💌		Effecti	ve Date From 2016-20-04		Get	
4	1 - 1/1 <b>&gt; &gt;&gt; - T T</b>				<u>▶ ≞ 0 ×</u>		<b>v</b>	Q.
- 0	Cash Code	Description	Currency	Finance Book	Account Balance	Status		
	CASH001	cash book	CAD	AVEOS	0.00	Active		
	CASH001	cash book	CAD	AVEOS	0.00	Active		
		Activate Cash Details				Inactivate Cash Details		

#### Figure 2.26 Activate / Inactivate Bank Cash Details

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Bank Details" page is launched. See Figure 2.26.
- 2. Select the **Bank Code** in Active status to be inactivated from the multiline.
- 3. Click the Inactivate Bank Code pushbutton to inactivate the bank code.
- 4. Select the Bank Code in Inactive status to be activated from the multiline.
- 5. Click the **Activate Bank Code** pushbutton to activate the bank code.
- 6. If all the bank codes are to be inactivated then, click the **Inactivate Bank** pushbutton to inactivate all the bank accounts.
- 7. If all the bank codes are to be activated then, click the **Activate Bank** pushbutton to activate all the bank accounts.
  - Note: In case a bank code has an account code mapped to it, then the bank account can be inactivated only after deleting the bank account definition in "Account Rule Definition". Also, if an account definition has to be deleted then the account code should have zero balance.

#### 2.3.6 SELECT BANK DETAILS

This sequence describes the process of selecting bank details for viewing.

	Bank Reference			Bank Account No.				
-Search Crite	eria Bank Reference			Bank Account No.		Bank Name		
	Bank Code			Status Active 💌			Search	
Search Resu	ults							
	-5/19 🕨 🗰 🕇 🔭				<b></b>	🖷 💷 🛛 All	•	ţ
🗉 Ban	k Reference	Bank Account No.	Bank Code	Bank Name	Bank Clearing No.	Swift No.	City	
1234	4	1234567	ASB	ICICI	456789		CHENNAI	
5643	3	10008765	ICICI	ICICI	12345678			
BMC	D CAD BLOCKED	BMO CAD BLOCKED	BMO CAD BLOCKED	AXIS BANk	000111259376	BOFMCAM2	Montreal	
BMC	D CAD CHEQUE	BMO CAD CHEQUE	BMO CAD CHEQUE	Bank of Montreal	8150101251446	BOFMCAM2	Montreal	
BMC	D CAD EFT	BMO CAD EFT	BMO CAD EFT	Bank of Montreal	000111259413	BOFMCAM2	Montreal	
4								

#### Figure 2.27 Select Bank Details

- 1. The "Select Bank" page is launched. See Figure 2.27.
- 2. Enter the Bank Reference and Bank Account No to be viewed.
- 3. Alternatively, use the search criteria to search for the bank details based on **Bank Reference**, **Bank Account No**, **Bank Name**, **Bank Code**, **Status** and **Effective Date From**.

#### 2.3.7 VIEW BANK

This sequence elaborates the process by which bank details can be viewed.

1. The "View Bank" page is launched. See Figure 2.28.

*	🗎 View Bank				44 4 1 2 3 4 5	• •	2 /19 📰	7; j	5	← ?	[0	ĸ
	Bank Reference 5643		Bank Na	me ICICI								Ê
	Address 1 123											
	City		S	tate	zip							
	Country Mala	ysia										
	Phone # E-Mail			Fax	Telex							
	E-Mail Bank Clearing # 1234	EC 70	Swift	No		Mailstop Bank Type						
-	Bank Account Information	5970	switt No. Bank Type									
	Bank Account No. 1000	8765	Credit Limit		Drawable Limit							
	Currency CAD											
	Electronic File Generation Based on Supplier Bank Type											
-	Bank Book Details											
	€ 1 -1/1 <b>→</b> → <b>▼ ▼</b>			<u>, н</u>				v			Q	
	Bank Code	Description	Finance Book	Posting Account Code			Credit Limit			Balance	in Ex	
1	ICICI	Bank	AVEOS	Bank456	0.00							
	•										•	
View	Bank Contact Details	View F	ile Transfer Details		Attach Notes							
	Created by		Created D	ate								
	Last Modified by DMU	SER	Last Modified D	ate 2015-10-06								Ŧ

#### Figure 2.28 View Bank

2. The Bank Code along with the details like EFT Generation, Posting Account Code, Account Balance, Credit Limit, Drawable Limit, Balance in Excess of Credit Limit etc will be displayed.

#### 2.3.8 CREATE CASH BOOK DETAILS

This sequence explains the process of defining a cash book with cash codes and specific currencies



*		Create Cash Book Details					III xt = □ ←	? 🗟 🗷			
	• [	No records to display] 🕨 🗰 🛨 🗕 🗇	4 0 C T T.		v	Q					
		Cash Code	Description	Currency	Map to Finance Book						
1				CAD .	AVE			*			
	Create Cash Book										
Cash Usage Information											
	Created by Created Date										

#### Figure 2.29 Create Cash Book Details

- 1. The "Create Cash Book Details" page is launched. See Figure 2.29.
- 2. Enter the Cash Code, Description, Currency and Map to Finance Book in the multiline.
- 3. Click the **Create Cash Book** pushbutton to create the cash book details.
# Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 4 – Company Setup

S.	Flow of Events	Primary	Component	Activity	UI Name	Functional Steps
No		Actor(s)	Name	Name		
1.	Create Currency Currency Denomination	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Currency and Country	<u>Create</u> <u>Currency</u>	<ol> <li>Enter currency information</li> <li>Create currency</li> <li>Check whether the created currency exists in the list of predefined values.</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Currency and Country	<u>Create</u> <u>Currency</u> <u>Denominatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Select currency code</li> <li>Enter currency denomination and description</li> <li>Create currency denomination</li> </ol>
2.	Inactivate Currency	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivat	<u>Activate /</u> <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Currency</u>	<ol> <li>Select currency code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Inactivate currency</li> </ol>
3.	Activate Currency	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivat	<u>Activate /</u> <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Currency</u>	<ol> <li>Select currency code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Activate currency</li> </ol>
4.	Create Company Create Registered Office (with Parallel Base Currency)	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Company</u>	<ol> <li>Enter company code, name and registration date</li> <li>If the company is a child company then specify the parent company details</li> <li>Enter address details</li> <li>Enter base currency and parallel base currency</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Registered</u> <u>Office details</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code, country</li> <li>Enter address details</li> <li>Register the details</li> </ol>
5.	Create Company Register Office (without Parallel Base Currency)	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	Create Company	<ol> <li>Enter company code, name and registration date</li> <li>If the company is a child company then specify parent company details</li> <li>Enter address details</li> <li>Enter base currency</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Registered</u> <u>Office details</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code and country</li> <li>Enter address details</li> <li>Register the details</li> </ol>

6.	Introduce parallel base currency subsequent to installation	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	Edit Company	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter parallel base currency</li> <li>Enter effective date for parallel base currency</li> </ol>
7.	Remove Parallel Base Currency	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	Edit Company	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Remove parallel base currency after specifying date</li> </ol>
8.	Assign Permitted Currencies	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Assign</u> <u>Permitted</u> <u>Currencies</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter ISO currency code to be assigned</li> <li>Assign currency</li> </ol>
9.	Unassign Permitted Currencies	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	<u>Unassign</u> <u>Permitted</u> <u>Currencies</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Select currency to be unassigned</li> <li>Unassign permitted currency</li> </ol>
10.	Create Finance Book Map to OU / BU	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Finance Book	<u>Create</u> <u>Finance Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter finance book ID and description</li> <li>Select book type and deployed at OU</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Create the finance book</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Map OU Finance Book	<u>Map Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select BU</li> <li>Select OU (only those that have been defined for that BU)</li> <li>Enter finance book and effective from date</li> <li>Map the finance book</li> </ol>
11.	Create Consolidation Finance Book Map to OU / BU	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Finance Book	<u>Create</u> <u>Finance Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select parent company code</li> <li>Enter finance book ID and description</li> <li>Select book type and deployed at OU</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Create finance book</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Map OU Finance Book	<u>Map Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select BU</li> <li>Select OU (not mandatory)</li> <li>Enter finance book and effective from date</li> <li>Map the finance book</li> </ol>

12.	Create Tax Book	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Finance Book	<u>Create</u> <u>Finance Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter tax book ID and description</li> <li>Select book type and deployed at OU</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Create finance book</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Map OU Finance Book	<u>Map Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select BU</li> <li>Select OU (not mandatory)</li> <li>Enter Finance Book and Effective from date</li> <li>Map the finance Book</li> </ol>
13.	Unmap Finance Book	Chief Finance Officer		Map OU Finance Book	<u>Map Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select BU and OU (not mandatory)</li> <li>Enter effective date (either system date or future date)</li> <li>Get details</li> <li>Unmap the finance book after giving effective date</li> </ol>
14.	Inactivate Finance Book (Tax Book)	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Finance Book	<u>Activate</u> / <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Finance Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Select finance book</li> <li>Enter effective from date         <ul> <li>(either system date or             future date)</li> <li>Inactivate finance book</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
15.	Activate Finance Book (Tax Book)	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Finance Book	<u>Activate</u> / <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Finance Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Select finance book</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Activate finance book</li> </ol>
16.	Inactivate Company	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Company	<u>Activate /</u> <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Company</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter effective from date         <ul> <li>(either system date or             future date)</li> <li>Inactivate company</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
17.	Activate Company	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Company	Activate / Inactivate Company	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Activate company</li> </ol>
18.	Create Business Unit - Internal Company	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Business Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Define BU ID and BU name, address ID and effective date</li> </ol>

19.	Create Business Unit - Across Companies	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Business Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Define BU ID and BU name, effective date and address ID</li> <li>Select company code</li> </ol>
20.	Inactivate Business Unit	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Company	<u>Activat</u> ∉ <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Business Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter effective from date         <ul> <li>(either system date or             future date)</li> <li>Select the business unit</li> <li>Inactivate BU</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
21.	Activate Business Unit	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Activate / Inactivate Company	<u>Activat∉</u> <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Business Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Select the business unit</li> <li>Activate BU</li> </ol>
22.	Create Logistics Organization	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Company	<u>Create</u> <u>Logistic</u> s <u>Organizatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Enter LO code, LO name Effective date</li> <li>Select business unit</li> <li>Create LO</li> </ol>
23.	Map BU to Logistics Organization	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	<u>Edit Logistic</u> s <u>Organizatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Select LO code, business unit</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> </ol>
24.	Unmap BU from Logistics Organization	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	<u>Edit Logistic</u> s <u>Organizatio</u> n	1. Select LO code, business unit 2. Enter effective from date
25.	Create Bank Reference details through uploading	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Bank Reference	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Bank</u> <u>Reference</u>	<ol> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Upload the information</li> </ol>
26.	Creation of Bank Reference details by manual data entry	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Bank Reference	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Bank</u> <u>Reference</u>	1. Enter data manually for all fields

29.	Map BFG to Organization Unit	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Map BFG to Organization Unit	<u>Map BFG to</u> <u>Organizatio</u> n <u>Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Select the business function group, company code</li> <li>Enter the effective date</li> <li>Get details (status can be given)</li> <li>Select the org unit to be mapped</li> </ol>
30.	Unmap BFG from Organization Unit	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Map BFG to Organization Unit	<u>Map BFG to</u> <u>Organizatio</u> n <u>Unit</u>	<ol> <li>Select the business function group, company code</li> <li>Enter the effective date</li> <li>Get details (status can be given)</li> <li>Select the OU to be unmapped</li> </ol>
31.	Create Business Segment with Finance Book same base currency	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Segment	<u>Create</u> <u>Segment</u>	<ol> <li>Select segment type as business segment</li> <li>Enter segment ID and name</li> <li>Enter effective date</li> <li>Select company code and finance book</li> </ol>
32.	Create Business Segment with Finance Book different base currencies	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Segment	<u>Create</u> <u>Segment</u>	<ol> <li>Select segment type as business segment</li> <li>Enter segment ID and name</li> <li>Enter effective date</li> <li>Select company code and finance book</li> </ol>
33.	Create Alternate Segment with Finance Book of same base currency	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Segment	<u>Create</u> <u>Segment</u>	<ol> <li>Select segment type as alternate segment</li> <li>Enter segment ID and name</li> <li>Enter effective date</li> <li>Select company code and finance book</li> </ol>
34.	Create Alternate Segment with Finance Book different base currencies	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Segment	<u>Create</u> <u>Segment</u>	<ol> <li>Select segment type as alternate segment</li> <li>Enter segment ID and name</li> <li>Enter effective date</li> <li>Select company code and finance book</li> </ol>

35.	Edit Segment	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Segment	Edit Segment	<ol> <li>Select business segment type</li> <li>Select segment</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Edit segment (name), company</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Segment	<u>Edit Segment</u>	<ol> <li>Select alternate segment type</li> <li>Select segment</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Edit segment (name), company</li> </ol>
36.	Unmap finance book from segment	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Segment	Edit Segment	<ol> <li>Select segment type</li> <li>Select segment</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Get details</li> <li>Select finance book</li> <li>Unmap finance book</li> </ol>
37.	Maintain Identification Details	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Identification details	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Identificatio</u> n <u>details</u>	<ol> <li>Select the company code, BU, org unit, identifier and get values</li> <li>Enter the identification number and default the value</li> <li>Maintain the</li> </ol>
38.	Delete Identification details	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Identification details	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Identificatio</u> n <u>details</u>	<ol> <li>Select the company code, BU, org unit, identifier and get values</li> <li>Delete the identification</li> </ol>
39	Maintaining identification references for entities	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Entity Level Identificati on Ref.	Maintain Entity Level Identificat ion Ref.	<ol> <li>Select Entity Type (Customer or Supplier)</li> <li>Select Customer # or Supplier #.</li> <li>Specify Identification</li> </ol>
40	Maintaining options for partner transactions	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Organizati on Parameter s	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Organizati</u> <u>on</u> <u>Paramete</u> <u>rs</u>	<ol> <li>Recording Relationship Details between transacting group companies</li> <li>Setting Value for process parameters for trading option between transacting group</li> </ol>

41.	Create Address details	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Address details	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Address</u> <u>details</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the address ID, description and address details</li> <li>Select the country</li> </ol>
42.	Update Address details	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Maintain Address details	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Address</u> <u>details</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the address ID, description and address details</li> <li>Select the country</li> </ol>
43.	Edit Currency Edit Currency denomination	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Currency	Edit Currency	<ol> <li>Select currency</li> <li>Modify details</li> </ol>
		Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Currency	<u>Edit Currency</u> <u>denominatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Select currency</li> <li>Modify details</li> </ol>
4	Create Country	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Currency and Country	<u>Create</u> <u>Country</u>	1. Enter country code, name, currency code
45.	Edit Company Register Office	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	<u>Edit Company</u>	<ol> <li>Select company code</li> <li>Modify details</li> </ol>
46	Edit Registered Office Details	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	Edit Registered Office Details	1. Modify register office details
47.	Edit Finance Book	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Finance Book	<u>Edit Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Select company</li> <li>Select finance book</li> <li>Modify details</li> </ol>
48.	Default Value Setting	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Edit Company	Edit Company	<ol> <li>Select company</li> <li>Select BU and modify details</li> </ol>
49.	Default Value Setting	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Set function defaults	<u>Set functio</u> n <u>defaults</u>	<ol> <li>Select one of the two values USD, Euro for the intermediate cross currency</li> <li>Select the sequence for base currency exchange rate category to choose the method of conversion</li> <li>Select the value of currency code loading option as company</li> </ol>



		Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Set function defaults	<u>Set functio</u> n <u>defaults</u>	<ol> <li>Select one of the two values USD, Euro for the intermediate cross currency</li> <li>Select the sequence for cross currency exchange rate category to choose the method of conversion</li> <li>Select the value of currency code loading option as company</li> </ol>
50.	Creating Exchange Rate Type	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Create Exchange Rate Type	<u>Create</u> <u>Exchange</u> <u>Rate Type</u>	1. Enter the exchange rate type (other than BR, SR, MR) and description
52	Modifying the Exchange Rate Type	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Edit exchange rate type	<u>Edit Exchange</u> <u>Rate Type</u>	<ol> <li>Select the exchange rate type and enter the description</li> </ol>
53	Activate / Inactivate Exchange Rate Type	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Activate/ Inactivate Exchange Rate Type	Activate / Inactivate Exchange Rate Type	<ol> <li>Select the exchange rate type</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Activate / inactivate</li> </ol>
54	Download the Exchange Rate	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Create Exchange Rates	<u>Create</u> <u>Exchange</u> <u>Rates</u>	<ol> <li>Select the exchange rate type, enter the valid from date and download rates</li> </ol>
55	Create Exchange Rates (Centralized Exchange Rate definition - One deployment for every installation)	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Create Exchange Rates	<u>Create</u> <u>Exchange</u> <u>Rates</u>	1. Enter the values of From Currency, To Currency, Exchange rate, Exchange Rate Type, Tolerance % and Tolerance Limit
56	Downloading the Exchange rate	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Create Exchange Rates	<u>Create</u> <u>Exchange</u> <u>Rates</u>	<ol> <li>Select the exchange rate type</li> <li>Enter the valid from date and</li> </ol>

45 | Book Keeping

57	Creating Exchange Rates (Decentralized Exchange Rate Definition (OU level deployment))	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	Create Exchange Rates	<u>Create</u> <u>Exchange</u> <u>Rates</u>	<ol> <li>Select the exchange rate type</li> <li>Enter the valid from date and download rates from temp table</li> <li>Enter the values of From Currency, To Currency, Exchange</li> </ol>
58.	Viewing the Exchange rate for the period/ year	Chief Finance Officer	Exchange Rate	View Exchange Rates by Date	<u>View Period</u> <u>/ Year End</u> <u>Rates</u>	1. Enter the financial year, financial period, From Currency, To Currency and Exchange Rate Type
59	Mapping organization units to a company		Enterprise Setup	Mapping organization units to a company	<u>Maintain OU</u> <u>– Company</u> <u>Mapping</u>	<ol> <li>Assign / unassign organization units for a company</li> </ol>
60	Creating quick codes for finance- related entities	Chief Finance Officer	Organization Setup	Create Quick Codes	<u>Create Quick</u> <u>Codes</u>	<ol> <li>Select Entity</li> <li>Specify the quick code, Value and Default for the entity</li> </ol>

# 2.4 COMPANY SETUP

Organization setup is a sequential process, covering master definitions, that enables posting financial transactions. This is the foremost activity undertaken subsequent to the installation of Ramco Enterprise Series and covers the whole gamut of definitions, starting with currency, country, company, business unit, finance books, logistics unit and segments. These definitions are extremely critical to the functioning of the application.

# 2.4.1 CREATE CURRENCY AND COUNTRY

This sequence elaborates the process of defining currencies with sub-unit details. The created currencies are then mapped to countries.

★ 🔋 Create Currency								5	6	ĸ
Currency Information										
ISO Currency Code	AMN	Numeric ISO Currency Code	123	Status						
Currency Symbol	Dh	Currency Description	Driham							
Currency Sub-units	25	Currency Sub-unit Description	Fils	Number of Units				10		
		Create	Currency							
Create Currency Denominations C		Create Country	Create Country							
Created by			Created Date							

#### Figure 2.30 Create Currency

- 1. The "Create Currency and Country" page is launched. See Figure 2.30.
- 2. Enter the currency details like ISO Currency Code, Numeric ISO Currency Code, Currency Symbol, Currency **Description**, **Currency Sub-units**, **Currency Sub-unit Description** and **Number of Units**.
- 3. Click **Create Currency** pushbutton to create the currency.

## 2.4.2 CREATE COUNTRY

This sequence details the process of defining countries in the application, in addition to the country codes assigned by the ISO.

★ 🔋 Create Company			≣ ≭ ≜ ¤ ← ? ⊡ ⊠
- Company Identity			
Company Code WCH	Company Name	W	
Parent Company Code 🛛 🔻	Parent Company Name		
Registration Date 2016-20-04	Partner ID		
Corporate Office			
Address - 1 4th Blo		City	
Pink Cit	City	State	
		Country United States 💌	
Zip		Telex	
Phone		Fax	
URL		Mailstop	
Company Currency			
Base Currency		Description	
Parallel Base Currency		Description	
		Create Company	
Create Registered Office Details	Assign Permitted Currencies	Create Business Units	
Create Logistic Organization	Maintain Identification Details	Attach Notes	
Created by			Created Date

### Figure 2.31 Create Country

- 1. The "Create Country" page is launched. See Figure 2.31.
- 2. Enter the ISO Country Code, Country and ISO Currency Code.
- 3. Click **Create Country** pushbutton to save the country details along with the assigned currency.

### **Create Currency Denomination**

This sequence explains the process of defining denomination details to a currency that has already been defined. Denominations are usually defined to make cash payments.



	📄 Create Curre			 -	
×	Create Curre	ncy Denomination		9 4	? 🛛 🗖
	IS	Currency Code AED 💌	Currency Description UAE Dirham		
-	Currency Denomination				
44	No records to dis	olay] 🕨 🗰 🕂 🗢 🗘 🔻 🕇		r	Q
#	Denominations	Description			
1					
- 1					
			Create Currency Denomination		
		Created by	Created Date		

### Figure 2.32 Create Currency Denominations

- 1. The "Create Currency Domination" page is launched. See Figure 2.32.
- 2. Select the currency code in the **ISO Currency Code** field of the header.
- 3. Enter the **Currency Denomination** details of the selected currency in the multiline.
- 4. Click Create Currency Denomination pushbutton to create denomination details.

## 2.4.3 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE CURRENCY

This sequence describes the process of activating or inactivating currencies. Currencies in Active status are inactivated and currencies in Inactive status can be activated.

★ 🗎 Activate/Inactivate Company		□ x = ↓ ← ? ⊡ 国
Company Identity		
Company Code 12 💌	Company Name 12	Effective Date 2016-20-04
Parent Company Code	Parent Company Name	Status Active
Corporate Office		
Address - 1 12	City	
12	State	
12	Country Philippines	
Zip	Telex	
Phone	Fax	
URL	Mailstop	
Company Currency		
Base Currency CAD	Description Canadian Dollar	
Parallel Base Currency	Description	
Activate	Company	Inactivate Company
Activate/Inactivate Business Unit	Attach Notes	
Created by DMUSER		Created Date 2015-09-06
Last Modified by DMUSER		Last Modified Date 2015-24-06

#### Figure 2.33 Activate / Inactivate Currency

- 5. The "Activate / Inactivate Currency" page is launched. See Figure 2.33.
- 6. Select the ISO Currency Code to be activated or inactivated.
- 7. Enter the **Effective Date** from which the activation / inactivation is valid.
- 8. Click the **Inactivate pushbutton** to activate a currency in the Active status (or) click the **Activate** pushbutton to activate a currency in the Inactive status.
  - Note: On activation the status of the currency gets updated to Active and on inactivation the status gets updated to Inactive.

### 2.4.4 CREATE COMPANY

This sequence explains the process of creating a company. Multiple companies can be defined during an installation. Base currency and parallel base currency for the company can also be set during creation.



★ 🗎 Create Company						=	t ←	? 0	ō K
Company Identity									_
Company Code WCH		Company Name W							
Parent Company Code	V	Parent Company Name							
Registration Date 2016-20-04	4 🗰	Partner ID							
<ul> <li>Corporate Office</li> </ul>									
Address - 1			City						
	Pink City		State						
				United States	-				
Zip			Telex						
Phone			Fax						
URL			Mailstop						
Company Currency									
Base Currency			Descript						
Parallel Base Currency			Descript	tion					
		Cre	eate Company						
Create Registered Office Details		Assign Permitted Currencies		Create Busi	ness Units				
Create Logistic Organization		Maintain Identification Details		Attach Note	5				
Created by					Creat	ted Date			

#### Figure 2.34 Create Company

- 1. The "Create Company" page is launched. See Figure 2.34.
- 2. Enter the Company Identity details like the **Company Code**, **Company Name** along with **Parent Company Code** and **Registration Date**.
- 3. Enter the Corporate Office details like Address, City, State, Country, Zip, Fax, Telex, Mailstop and URL.
- 4. Enter the company's currency details also like: Base Currency, Parallel Base Currency, if any.
- 5. Click the **Create Company** pushbutton to create the company with **company identity**, **corporate office** and **company currency** details.

### **Create Registered Office Details**

This sequence details the process of specifying the registered office details for a company that has been created.

* 🔋 Create Registered Office Details	Create Registered Office Details							
Company Identity Company Code WCH	Company Name WCH							
Registered OfficeAddress  Address - 1	City State Country United States 💌	Zip						
Phone URL	Fax Malitop	Telex						
Create Registered Office Details								
Created by	Created Date							

#### Figure 2.35 Create Registered Office Details

- 1. The "Create Registered Office Details" page is launched. See Figure 2.35.
- The user should select Company Code and then enter the Registered office details like Address, City, State, Country, Fax, Telex, and Mailstop etc.
- 3. Click the Create Registered Office Details pushbutton to save the details.

### 2.4.5 EDIT COMPANY

This sequence explains the process of modifying details of a company that has already been defined. Corporate office and currency details of the company can be modified.



★ 🗎 Edit Company					■ x ● ↓ ↓ ? □
Company Identity Company Code 12 T Parent Company Code	Company Name Parent Company Name	[AMG]		Status Active	
Registration Date 2015-09-06	Partner ID				
Corporate Office					
Address - 1 12		City			
12		State			
12		Country	Philippines	T	
Zip		Telex			
Phone		Fax			
URL		Mailstop			
Company Currency					
Base Currency CAD		Des	cription Canadian Dollar		
Parallel Base Currency		Des	cription		
Effective Date 2016-	-20-04				
			Edit Company		
Edit Registered Office Details	Ur	nassign Permitted Currencies		Edit Business Unit	
Edit Logistic organization		aintain Identification Details		Attach Notes	
Created b Last Modified b	by DMUSER		Created Date Last Modified Date	e 2015-09-06 e 2015-24-06	

#### Figure 2.36 Edit Company

- 1. The "Edit Company" page is launched. See Figure 2.36.
- 2. Select Company Code, whose corporate office or currency details are to be modified.
- 3. Modify the appropriate fields.
- 4. Click Edit Company pushbutton to save modifications made.

### 2.4.6 ASSIGN PERMITTED CURRENCIES

This sequence elaborates the process of assigning currencies to an already defined company, in which the company can transact.

\star 🏢 Create Registered Office De	etails					≣ z;	5 F	← ?	0
Company Identity     Company Code     W     Registered OfficeAddress	NCH T	Company Name	WCH						
Address - 1		City State Country	United States	Y	Zip				
Phone URL		Fax Mailstop			Telex				
Create Registered Office Details									
	Created by			Created Da	te				

#### Figure 2.37 Assign Permitted Currencies

- 1. The "Assign Permitted Currencies" page is launched. See Figure 2.37.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** to which the currencies are to be assigned.
- 3. Enter the ISO Currency Code manually or use Help on Currency to retrieve currency details in the multiline.
- 4. Click Assign Permitted Currencies pushbutton to assign currencies to the company

### 2.4.7 UNASSIGN PERMITTED CURRENCIES

This sequence details the process of unassigning the currency from a company to which it has already been mapped. The company can no more transact in this currency.



★		园 x4	a t	← ?	0
Company Code 12 V Base Currency CAD	Company Name 12 Parallel Base Currency	Effective Date 2016-20-04			
🕶 📢 [No records to display] 🕨 🗰 🝸 📆			T		Q
# 🗏 ISO Currency Code Currency Description	Status				
	Found no rows to display!!!				
	Unassign Permitted Currencies				
Attach Notes					

Figure 2.38 Unassign Permitted Currencies

- 1. The "Unassign Permitted Currencies" page is launched. See Figure 2.38.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** from which the currencies are to be unassigned.
- 3. Click the Help on Currency to retrieve the currency details in the multiline.
- 4. Select the currencies to be unassigned under **ISO Currency Code**.
- 5. Click the Unassign Permitted Currencies pushbutton to unassign the currencies from the company.

### 2.4.8 CREATE FINANCE BOOK

This sequence describes the process of defining a finance book for a company. A finance book can be termed as an entity that contains financial information. Finance books can be posting FB, main FB or consolidation FB.

★ 🗎 Create Finance Book			≣ × ē	₽ ← ? ⊡ ⊼
Company Code 500	Company Nar	ne Ramco Aviation Solution		
			T AL	۹ ۵
# Finance Book Finance Book Descr	on Book Type	Deployed At	Effective Date	
1 BI Posting Finance Book	Consolidation FB	V DROU1 V	2016-20-04	
2 🗉	Consolidation FB	· ·		
Attach Notes	Create Finance Book			

#### Figure 2.39 Create Finance Book

- 1. The "Create Finance Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.39.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** in which Finance Book is to be created.
- 3. Enter the Finance Book Code, Finance Book Description along with Book Type, Deployed At and Effective Date in the multiline.
- 4. Click the **Create Finance Book** pushbutton to create the finance book for the company.

### **Map Finance Book**

This sequence explains the process of mapping a posting finance book to an organization unit. Unmapping finance books from an OU can also be done.



★ 🔋 Map Finance Book						= ≍ 를 다 ← (	? 🗔 🗖
Business Unit EXE2WIN	•		Business Unit Name Execute	e To Win		Effective Date 2016-20-04	Ē
Org. Unit DROU10	*		Company Name EXE2W	IN	Get Details		
Finance Book Details							
📢 🕴 [No records to display] 🕨 🕨	+ 0 0 C T T		人工		# # III	All 👻	Q
# 🗉 Finance Book 🔎	Finance Book Description		Status	Start Date	End Date		
1							
		Map Finance Book	UnMap Finance Bo	ok			
	Created by			Created Da	ite		

#### Figure 2.40 Map Finance Book - OU

- 1. The "Map Finance Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.40.
- 2. Select the **Business Unit** and the **Organization Unit** to which the finance book has to be mapped or from which the finance book has to be unmapped.
- 3. Select the **Finance Book** and the corresponding **Finance Book Description** in the multiline by making use of Help on Finance Book.
- 4. Click the **Map Finance Book** pushbutton to map the finance book to the organization unit.
- 5. Click the UnMap Finance Book to unmap the finance book from any of the organization unit.

# 2.4.9 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE FINANCE BOOK

This sequence details the process of activating an Inactive finance book and inactivating an Active finance book.

🖈 🔋 Activate / InActivate Finance Book 🔤 🕫 🖶 🔶										
- Fi	nance	Company Code e Book Details	ABLEENG V	Company Nan	ne Able Engineering			Effective Date 2016-20-04		m
44 4		1 -4/4 > >> - T T	1			<u>ل</u> ا		E Al	•	۶
*		Finance Book	Finance Book Description		Book Type		Deployed At	Status		Start Date
		ABLEPFB1	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB		DROU9	Active		2011-01-01
2		ABLEPFB1	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB		DROU9	Active		2015-09-09
3		ABLEPFB2	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB		DROU9	Active		2011-01-01
		ABLEPFB2	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB		DROU9	Active		2015-09-09
		۲								
				Activate Finance Book	Ir	nActivate Finance Bo	ok			
tach I	Votes									

#### Figure 2.41 Activate / Inactivate Finance Book

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Finance Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.41.
- 2. Select the Company Code in which the finance book is to be activated / inactivated.
- 3. Select the **Finance Book** (only posting finance books) in Active status and click the **Inactivate Finance Book** pushbutton to inactivate the finance book.
- 4. Select the **Finance Book** (only posting finance books) in Inactive status and click the **Activate Finance Book** pushbutton to activate the finance book

### 2.4.10 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE COMPANY

This sequence explains the process of activating or inactivating a company.



4/4 » » — T T	Finance Book Description											
1				→ Finance Book Details								
ce Book												
	Hinance Book Description		Book Type	Deployed At	Status	Start Date						
PFB1	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB	DROU9	Active	2011-01-01						
PFB1	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB	DROU9	Active	2015-09-09						
PFB2	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB	DROU9	Active	2011-01-01						
PFB2	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK		Posting FB	DROU9	Active	2015-09-09						
			c									
PF	B2	B2 ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK	B2 ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK	782 ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK Posting FB 782 ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK Posting FB	TB2     ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK     Posting FB     DR0.09       B2     ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK     Posting FB     DR0.09	TB2     ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK     Posting FB     DROU9     Active       B2     ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK     Posting FB     DROU9     Active						

### Figure 2.42 Activate / Inactivate Company

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Company" page is launched. See Figure 2.42.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** in the header which is to be activated / inactivated.
- 3. Click the Inactivate Company pushbutton to inactivate the company that is in Active status.
- 4. Click the **Activate** Company pushbutton to activate the company that is in the Inactive status.

### 2.4.11 CREATE BUSINESS UNIT

This sequence elaborates the process of creating a business unit within a company. A business unit can be considered as a logical division of an organization.

Create Business Units					고 등 다 ← ?	
Business Unit Within a Company						
Company C	ode 12 💌		Company Name 12	Effective Date	(7)	
<ul> <li>[No records to display]</li> </ul>	+ 0 0 0 T T.				<b>~</b>	J
Business Unit	Business Unit Name	Address ID 🔎	Description			
			Create Business Unit			
Business Unit across Companies		Attach Notes				
	Created by			Created Date		

#### Figure 2.43 Create Business Unit

- 1. The "Create Business Unit" page is launched. See Figure 2.43.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** for which the business units are created.
- 3. Enter the Business Unit, Business Unit Name along with the Address Id.
- 4. Enter the Effective From Date.
- 5. Click the Create Business Unit pushbutton to create the business units for the company

### 2.4.12 CREATE BUSINESS UNIT (SPANNING ACROSS COMPANIES)

This sequence details the process of creating a business unit that spans across companies. This process can be carried only if the installation parameter "BU Cutting Across Company" has been set to "Yes".



*	Create Business U	Jnits				⊐/\$	ē ⊊	t 🔶	? [	¢ K
	Business Unit Spanning Acro	oss Companies								
	Business Address	s Unit	Business Unit Name Description		Effective Date	14-07-201	5		Ē	
	<ul> <li>[No records to display]</li> </ul>	• • + 0 0 T T.					Ŧ			Q
#	Company Code	Company Name								
1	*									
-			Create Business Unit							
Attac	h Notes									
		Created by		Created Date						



- 1. The "Create Business Units" page is launched using the link "Business Unit across Companies" link. See Figure 2.44.
- 2. Enter the **Business Unit** and press the <Enter> key to retrieve the **Business Unit Name** and **Effective Date**.
- 3. If a new BU is created that spans across companies, then enter the **Business Unit**, **Business Unit Name** and **Effective Date** and enter the **Address ID**.
- 4. Select the **Company Codes** that are to be assigned to the business unit in the multiline.
- 5. Click the **Create Business Unit** pushbutton to create the business unit that spans across companies.

# 2.4.13 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE BUSINESS UNIT

Business units that have been defined for a company can be activated / inactivated. This sequence explains such processes.

в	usine	Company Code ss Unit Details	12 💌	Company Name 12				Effective Date 2016-20-04				
Ľ	4	1 - 1/1 > >> Y Y.						# # II	All	Ŧ		
		Business Unit	Business Unit Name	Status	Start Date	End Date						
		12	Exec OU	Active	2015-09-06							

#### Figure 2.45 Activate / Inactivate Business Unit

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Business Unit" page is launched. See Figure 2.45.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** in the header and the corresponding **Business Unit**, **Business Unit Name**, **Status**, **Start Date** and **End Date** are retrieved in the multiline.
- 3. Select the business unit in Active status and click the **Inactivate Business Unit** pushbutton to inactivate the business unit.
- 4. Select the business unit in Inactive status and click the **Activate Business Unit** pushbutton to activate the business unit.

### 2.4.14 CREATE LOGISTIC ORGANIZATION

This sequence describes the process of defining a logistic organization for a company. An LO is defined as an operational entity which comprises multiple business units.



*	D	Create Logistic Organizati	ion				Ъ\$		₽ ♦	. ?	
-		Logistics Organizati Effective Da			Logistics Organization Nan	ne l					
44	• [	No records to display] 🕨 🕨	+ 0 0 0 T T.					Ŧ			Q
#		Business Unit 🔎	Business Unit Name	Company Code	Company Name						
1											
				Create	Logistic Organization						
Atta	th Note	S									
		Created	by		Created Da	te					

#### Figure 2.46 Create Logistic Organization

- 1. The "Create Logistic Organization" page is launched. See Figure 2.46.
- 2. Enter the Logistics Organization, Logistics Organization Name and Effective Date.
- 3. Select the Business Unit in the multiline using Help on Business Unit.
- 4. Click the "Create Logistics Organization" pushbutton to map the business unit to logistics organization.

# 2.4.15 EDIT LOGISTICS ORGANIZATION

This sequence explains the process of modifying the details of a logistic organization that has already been defined.

I     1     -1/1     ▶     +     □       F     Business Unit 𝒫     □       I     □     AIRASIA       2     □	C 🗘 🗱 🛪 🔭	Company Code			▼
AIRASIA					
	AIR ASIA		Company Name	Status	Start Dat
		AIRASIA	AIR ASIA	Mapped	01-01-20
4					
4	Map Business Unit			UnMap Business Unit	

### Figure 2.47 Edit Logistic Organization

- 1. The "Edit Logistics Organization" page is launched. See Figure 2.47.
- 2. Select the Logistics Organization in the header and corresponding business unit details are retrieved in the multiline.
- 3. Enter the **Business Unit** (using Help on Business Unit) and click the **Map Business Unit** pushbutton to map the business unit to the logistic organization.
- 4. Select a **Business Unit** and click the **UnMap Business Unit** pushbutton to unmap the business unit from the logistic organization

### 2.4.16 MAINTAIN BANK REFERENCE

This sequence details the process of uploading bank reference details from an external source into the application. Also, bank reference details can also be entered manually and saved.



	ank I	nformation							L	Upload		
			O O O T T				h 🖥 X 🔽	8 x c + + II	All	T		
*		Bank Reference	Bank Name	Status	Bank Clearing No.	Swift No.		BSR No.	Sort Code	1.1	BIC Code	
		1234	ICICI	Inactive	456789							
		1234	ICICI	Active	456789							
		234	RTYU	Inactive	FSFF	SDSDCS		sff				
		234	RTYU	Active	FSFF	SDSDCS		sff				
		5643	ICICI	Active	12345678							
		7894	AXIS	Active	123456	ABCD						
,		AXIS111	AXIS	Active	1009873452							
3		AXIS123	AXIS BANK	Active	1000897654							
		BMO CAD BLOCKED	Bank of Montreal	Inactive	000111259376	BOFMCAM2						
0		BMO CAD BLOCKED	AXIS BANk	Active	000111259376	BOFMCAM2						
1		BMO CAD CHEQUE	Bank of Montreal	Active	8150101251446	BOFMCAM2						
2		BMO CAD EFT	Bank of Montreal	Active	000111259413	BOFMCAM2						
3		BMO CAD GENERAL	Bank of Montreal	Active	000111259368	BOFMCAM2						
4		BMO CAD PAYROLL	Bank of Montreal	Active	000111259448	BOFMCAM2						
5		BMO USD BLOCKED	Bank of Montreal	Active	000114643225	BOFMCAM2						
		4										
_												_
			Save					Inactivate				

#### Figure 2.48 Maintain Bank Reference

- 1. The "Maintain Bank Reference" page is launched. See Figure 2.48.
- Enter the bank reference details in the multiline: Bank Reference, Bank Name, Address, City, State, Country, Zip, Phone No, Fax, E-mail, Telex, Bank Clearing Number, Swift Number, Bank Type, BSR No., Sort Code, BIC Code, RTGS / IFSC Code, Transit Number, BSB Number, Routing / ABA / Fed Wire, Address – 1 and Effective From Date.
- 3. Click **Save** pushbutton to save the bank reference details.
- 4. Click the **Inactivate** pushbutton to inactivate the bank reference.
- 5. Click the Upload pushbutton to upload the data in a prescribed format (i.e. XML).

### 2.4.17 MAP BFG – ORGANIZATION UNIT

This sequence elaborates the process of mapping business function groups to organization units. This mapping is mandatory for the closure of the finance books that have been mapped to the organization unit.

★ 🔋 Map BFG - Organization Unit			= :	☆ 膏 다 ← ?	0 K
Business Function Group [EER] V Company Code 12 V Status Unmapped V	Business Function Group Name Benefits Function Company Name 12	I	Effective Date Get		
(4) 4 [No records to display] → → + = □ ≠ 0 € T T.	4		All	<b>•</b>	Q
# 🔲 Org. Unit 👂	Org. Unit Desc	Start Date	End Date	Status	
1					
4					Þ
Мар		UnMap			_
Attach Notes					
Created by			Created Date		

#### Figure 2.49 Map BFG – Organization Unit

- 1. The "Map BFG Organization Unit" page is launched. See Figure 2.49.
- 2. Select the Business Function Group and the Company Code in the header.
- 3. Select the Status in the header and click the Get pushbutton to retrieve the organization unit details in the multiline.
- 4. To map a new OU, enter the **Org. Unit** using Help on Organization Unit.
- 5. Select an OU that has already been mapped and click the **UnMap OU** pushbutton to unmap the OU from the business function group.

6. Select an OU that has already been unmapped and click the **Map OU** pushbutton to map the OU to the business function group.

## 2.4.18 CREATE SEGMENT

This sequence explains the process of defining segments. A segment refers to a logical grouping of posting finance books. Segments can be either business or alternate segments.

*		Create Busi	ness Seg	ment			= # = # + ? [ ■ ]
-	Finan	e Book Details		t Type Business Segment Date 2016-20-04	•	Segment SMG	Segment Name SMG Segment 1
	_			- 0 % 0 0 T T			
#		Company Code		Finance Book	Finance Book Description		
1		AEGF	~	EXEPFB1	EXE TO WIN POSTING FINANCE BOOK		
2			*		*		
						Create Segment	
Attac	h Note	s					
			Crea	ted by			Created Date

Figure 2.50 Create Segment

- 1. The "Create Segment" page is launched. See Figure 2.50.
- 2. Select the Segment Type to be Business Segment or Alternate Segment.
- 3. Enter the Segment and Segment Name and Effective Date.
- 4. Select the **Company Code** and **Finance Book** in the multline.
  - Note: A finance book mapped to a business segment cannot be mapped to any other business segment. However, a finance book mapped to an alternate segment can be mapped to other segments.
- 5. Click the **Create Segment** pushbutton to create the segment.

### 2.4.19 EDIT SEGMENT

This sequence explains the process of modifying a business or an alternate segment that has already been created

*		Edit Segment			_					<u>≣</u> _;;	-	ci 4		
-			Segmen	t Type Alternate Segment e Date 2016-20-04			Segment 💌		Segment Name	Get Det				
	4	1 -1/1 🕨 🕅	+						a III Al				_	Q
#	V	Company Code		Finance Book		Finance Book Description		Status	Start Date					
1	V	EXE2WIN	~	ABLEPFB1	*	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK								
2			*		*									
				Edit Segment				Unmap Finance Book						
Attach	h Notes													
		ı	Crea Last Modi	ited by fied by					Created Date					

#### Figure 2.51 Edit Segment

- 1. The "Edit Segment" page is launched. See Figure 2.51.
- 2. Modify the segment details: Segment Name, Effective Date, Company Code and Finance Book.
- 3. Click the Edit Segment pushbutton to modify the segment details.

4. Click the Unmap Finance Book pushbutton to unmap finance books from a business / alternate segment.

# 2.4.20 MAINTAIN IDENTIFICATION DETAILS

This sequence elaborates the process of assigning an identification code that is used to refer to a company, a product or taxes.

*		Maintain Identification Details				≣ ≭ ē ⊄ ?	lo K
		Company Code 12 💌		Company Name 12			
		Business Unit		Business Unit Name			
		Org. Unit					
		Identifier COMPANY IDENTIFICATION REFER	ENCE			Get	
	denti	fication Details					
44	4	1-2/2 > >> + C O O Y T		<u>له</u>		<b>v</b>	Q
#		Applicable Identification Reference	Description	Identification No	Default		
1		QC001	QCVALUE		No		*
2		TEST001	Testing001Edit		No		*
3					No		*
-	_	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
		Maintain Identification Details			Delete Identification Detials		
-		Created by DMUSER		Created Date 2015-09-06			

#### Figure 2.52 Maintain Identification Details

- 1. The "Maintain Identification Details" page is launched. See Figure 2.52.
- 2. Select the **Company Code**, **Business Unit** and **Organization Unit** along with the Identifier (if the identifier has already been defined).
- 3. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the details.
- 4. Enter the **Identification No**.
- 5. Select the identification details from the multiline and click the **Maintain Identification Details** pushbutton to save the Identification details
- 6. Select the identification details to be deleted and click the **Delete Identification Details** pushbutton to delete the information

# 2.4.21 MAINTAIN IDENTIFICATION REFERENCES FOR ENTITIES

This activity enables you to record / update GST and other related tax registration numbers for companies, customers and suppliers with respect to specific tax regions and business lines.

- 1. The Maintain Entity Level Identification Ref. page appears. See Figure Figure 2.53
- 2. In the **Identification Details** multiline, use the Identifier drop-down list box to select the identifier for which you want to set the tax identification number.
- 3. Use the Identification Ref. drop-down list box to select the identification reference for the identifier.
- 4. Use the **Entity Type** drop-down list box to select the type of the entity. The drop-down list box displays Self Company, Supplier and Customer.
- 5. Use the Company Code drop-down list box to select the company code, if the entity type is "Self Company".
- 6. Use the **Finance Book** drop-down list box to select the finance box of the company, if the entity type is "Self Company".
- 7. Enter the identification number of the trading partner, if the entity type is Customer or Supplier in the **Trading Partner #** field..
- 8. Use the Tax Region drop-down list box to select the tax region for the trading partner / entity.
- 9. Use the **Address Category** drop-down list box to select the address category under which you wish to record address details.

- 10. Use the Addl. Ref. drop-down list box to select the business line for which you want to define identification reference number, such as MRO, Airline or Maintenance.
- 11. Enter the unique **Identification #** for the identification reference.
- 12. Enter the date on which the Tax Identification # was issued to the entity by the Tax department of the government in the **Registration Date** field
- 13. Use the Status drop-down list box to set the status of the identification record..
- 14. Use the **Primary** drop-down list box to indicate whether the identification number is primary in case of the entity holding multiple identification numbers.
  - Note: Multiple identification numbers can be defined for an entity, if the entity is involved in multiple lines of business in various states/tax regions.
- 15. Click the **Save** pushbutton.

# 2.4.22 MAINTAIN ORGANIZATION PARAMETERS

To manage business transactions between related/group/sister concerns, the relationship between such companies are established in this activity and account postings for the same are controlled/enabled through options defined for specific trading type.

- 1. The "Maintain Organization Parameters" page is launched. See Figure 2.54.
- 2. Select the "Application Relations" tab to define trade relations between transacting and group companies
- 3. Select the "Set Options" tab to define values for process parameters
- 4. Click the "Save" pushbutton.

### **Establishing relationship between companies**

- 5. Select the "Application Relations" tab. See Figure 2.
- 6. Enter Defn. for Company, Defn. for Partner ID, Transacting with Company, Transacting with Partner ID and Options

### Setting process parameters for trading option

- 7. Select the "Set Options" tab. See Figure 2.
- 8. In the "Search by" group box, specify following criteria to retrieve process parameters for which you want to set a value.
- 9. Click the "Search" pushbutton.

### Enter Value for the process parameter.

10. Click the "Save" pushbutton.

### 2.4.23 MAINTAIN ADDRESS DETAILS

This sequence describes the process of maintaining the address details of various locations in which the company's offices are situated. A unique address reference number is given to the addresses for easy identification.



\star 🏢 Maintain Address Details				圓 丼 帚  ← ? 同 国
- Address Identity				
Address ID Address Details	A1010	Description	New Address	
Address Decails	2/325	City	New York	
	Spring Dale	State		
		Country	United States 💌	
Zip		Telex		
Phone	001 523 647 2598	Fax		
URL		Mailstop		
	Create Address		Update Address	
Attach Notes				
Created by		Created Date		
Last Modified by		Last Modified Date		

#### Figure 2.55 Maintain Address Details

- 1. The "Maintain Address details" page is launched. See Figure 2.55.
- 2. Enter the Address ID and Description.
- 3. Enter the address details like City, State, Country, Zip, Phone, URL, Telex and Mailstop.
- 4. Click the Create Address pushbutton to create a new address ID and
- 5. Click the **Update Address** pushbutton to update the existing address details.

### Help on Organization Unit

This sequence describes the process of retrieving organization unit details using the help facility on organization unit.

	Search Criteria													×
			Company Code	V	Business Unit									
	Sear	ch Result	Org, Unit					Search						
44	_		0/24 🕨 🕨 🝸 🏹					# # II	All	Ŧ	_	_	\$	Q
#	E	Busine	ss Unit	Org. Unit		Org. Unit Desc								
1	E	3		DROU11		ENGLAND							-	*
2	E			DROU12		CHENNAI								
3	E	3		DROU13		MUMBAI								
4	E			REPOU		Report OU								
5		12		DROUB		SPAIN-2							_	
6		ABLEE		DROU9		PORTUGAL								
7		ATUNI		DROU1		FRANCE							_	
8		ATUNI		DROUZ		NORWAY								
9		ATUNI		DROU3		ITALY								
10	E	ATUNI	т	DROU4		AUSTRALIA								-
					ОК									-

#### Figure 2.56 Help on Organization Unit

- 1. The "Help on Organization Unit" page is launched. See Figure 2.56.
- 2. Select Company Code and Business Unit in the header
- 3. Click the Search pushbutton to retrieve OU details in the multiline
- 4. Select the OU and click the **OK** pushbutton to transfer the details to the main page.

### **Help on Address**

This sequence elaborates the process of retrieving address details using the help facility on address.



Help On Address 👼 🛱										
- s	earch	Criteria								
		Address	ID	Description		Country				
			Dity	State			Search			
_		is Details								
		1 -8/8 ▶ ▶ ▼	τ.				<u>م</u>			
#		Address ID	Description	Address	City	State	Country			
1		1	Corporate		Chennai	Tamil Nadu	India			
2		111	122				United States			
3			test				India			
4			ramco Sys		MAA	TN	India			
5		CHN	Chennai		Chennai	Tamil Nadu	India			
6		NO.6/5	KHKBD				Pakistan			
7		RAH	REPUBLIC AIRWAYS - US				United States			
8		RAH(USA)	Republic Airways				United States			
		•					4			
				01	K					

#### Figure 2.57 Help on Address

- 1. The "Help on Address" page is launched. See Figure 2.57.
- 2. Enter the Address ID, Description, Country, City and State in the header based on which address details are retrieved.
- 3. Click the **Search** pushbutton to search for the address ID.
- 4. Select the Address ID from the multiline and click the OK pushbutton to transfer the details to the main page.

### 2.4.24 EDIT CURRENCY

This sequence explains the process of modifying the details of currencies that have been defined and assigned to companies.

★ 🔋 Edit Currency Denomination			≣ ≭ 膏 ⊄ <b>?</b>	
ISO Currency Code AED 💌	Currency Description UAE Dirham			
Currency Denomination				
< < [No records to display] > >> + 🗇 🐼 🏹 🔨			Ψ	Q
# 🗏 Denominations Description				
1 🗖				
Edit Currency Denomination		Delete Currency Denomination		
Created by	Created Date			
Last Modified by	Last Modified Date			

### Figure 2.58 Edit Currency

- 1. The "Edit Currency" page is launched. See Figure 2.58.
- 2. Select the **ISO Currency Code** based on which the currency details are retrieved.
- 3. Modify the Numeric ISO Currency Code, Currency Symbol, Currency Description, Currency Sub-Units, Currency **Sub-unit Description** and **Number of Units**.
- 4. Click the Edit Currency pushbutton to save the modified details.

### **Edit Currency Denomination**

This sequence details the process of modifying the denomination details that has already been assigned to a currency.



★ 🗎 Edit Currency Denomination		
ISO Currency Code AED 💌	Currency Description UAE Dirham	
Currency Denomination		
🕶 ፋ [No records to display] > >> + 🗂 🐼 🛱 🝸 🔭		▼ D
# 🗉 Denominations Description		
1		
Edit Currency Denomination	Delete Currency Denomination	
Created by	Created Date	
Last Modified by	Last Modified Date	

### Figure 2.59 Edit Currency Denomination

- 1. The "Edit Currency Denomination" page is launched. See Figure 2.59.
- 2. Select the ISO Currency Code based on which the currency denomination details are retrieved.
- 3. Modify the Denomination and Description.
- 4. Click the Edit Currency Denomination pushbutton to save the modified details.
- 5. Click the Delete Currency Denomination pushbutton to delete the currency denomination details.

### **Edit Registered Office Details**

This sequence elaborates the process of modifying the registered office details that has been entered while creating a company.

* 🗎 Edit Registered Office	e Details				22	: 6	₽	<b>+</b> '	? [	ē 🖪
Company Identity     Company Code     Registered OfficeAddress	• 0202 •	Company Na	me test		Status Active					
Address - 1	Sardar patel road	State	Chennai Tamil nadu							
Zip Phone	Yogi garden	Country Telex Fax	India							
URL		Mailstop Edit Regis	tered Office Details							
	odified by DMUSER		Created Date Last Modified Date							

#### Figure 2.60 Edit Registered Office Details

- 1. The "Edit Registered Office Details" page is launched. See Figure 2.60.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** whose registered office details must be modified.
- 3. Modify the address details.
- 4. Click the **Edit Registered Office Details** pushbutton to save the modifications made.

### 2.4.25 EDIT FINANCE BOOK

This sequence explains the process of modifying the details of finance books that has been mapped to a company.



Image: Company Code     BLEENG     Company Code       I a 3/3     I a										
I 1-3/3     I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I I				Company Code ABLEENG 💌	Company Name Able E	ingineering				
Pinance Book         Finance Book         Endition         Book Type         Dipplyed/At         Effective from Date           ABLEMPB         ABLEMME TRAINCE BOOK         Main FB         DR0UP         2011-01-01           ABLEMPE         ABLEDOSTINIS FINANCE BOOK         Potting FB         DR0UP         2015-09-09           ABLEFPE2         ABLEDOSTINIS FINANCE BOOK         Deting FB         DR0UP         2015-09-09	Fin								 	
ABLE MAIN         FINANCE BOOK         Main FP         DR0U9         2011-01-01           BALEFPB1         ABLE FOSTING FINANCE BOOK         Posting FB         DR0U9         2015-09-09           BALEFPB2         ABLE FOSTING FINANCE BOOK         Posting FB         DR0U9         2015-09-09	4	1	1 - 3 / 3 🕨	» + O Q Q Y Y.			🗎 😒 👎 🖷 💷 🗛			
ABLE FPB1         ABLE FOSTING FUNANCE BOOK         Posting FB         DROU9         2015-09-09           BABLE FPB2         ABLE FOSTING FUNANCE BOOK         Posting FB         DROU9         2015-09-09		8	Finance Book	Finance Book Description	Book Tj	vpe Deployed At	Effective from Date	e		
E ABLEFPB2 ABLE POSTING FUNANCE BOOK Posting FB DR0U9 2015-09-09			ABLEMFB	ABLE MAIN FINANCE BOOK	Main FE	B DROU9	2011-01-01			
			ABLEPFB1	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK	Posting	FB DROU9	2015-09-09			
			ABLEPFB2	ABLE POSTING FINANCE BOOK	Posting	FB DROU9	2015-09-09			
					Edit Finance B	ook				
Edt Finance Book										

#### Figure 2.61 Edit Finance Book

- 1. The "Edit Finance Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.61.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** whose finance book details must be modified.
- 3. Modify the Finance Book Description in the multiline.
- 4. Click the Edit Finance Book pushbutton to save the modifications made to the finance book details.

# 2.4.26 EDIT BUSINESS UNIT

This sequence elaborates the process of modifying a business unit that has been defined for a company.

*		Edit Business Unit					≣ .7‡	ē ₽	← ?	¢ K
	Busine	Company Code ss Unit Details	12 💌		Company Name 12					
	4	1 -1/1 > >> + = 0	700TT.					v		Q
+		Business Unit	Business Unit Name	Address ID	Description	Effective Date				
			Exec OU	111	122	2015-09-06				
2										
					Edit Business Unit					
Attaci	Notes									

### Figure 2.62 Edit Business Unit

- 1. The "Edit Business Unit" page is launched. See Figure 2.62.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** whose business unit details must be modified.
- 3. Modify the **Business Unit Name** and **Address ID** in the multiline.
- 4. Click the "Edit Business Unit" pushbutton to save the modified details.

## 2.4.27 SET FUNCTION DEFAULTS

This sequence explains the process of setting functional default values for the Exchange Rate business component.

* 🗎 Set Function Defaults				= x;	ē ₽ ←	? 0	lo K
Intermediate Cross Currency Sequence for Base Currency Exchange Rate Category Sequence for Cross Currency Exchange Rate Category Currency Code Lauding Option Default Exchange Rate Type	1 V 1 V Company Currency Codes V	2 💌 2 💌	3	¥			_
		Set Function Defaults					

#### Figure 2.63 Set Function Defaults

1. The "Set Function Default" page is launched. See Figure 2.63.

- Select values for Intermediate Cross Currency, Sequence for Base Currency Exchange Rate Category, Sequence for Cross Currency Exchange Rate Category, Currency Code Loading Option and Default Exchange Rate Type.
- 3. Click the **Set Function Defaults** pushbutton to set the functional default values.

# 2.4.28 CREATE EXCHANGE RATE TYPE

This sequence describes the process of defining exchange rate types.

★ 🔋 Create Exchange Rate Type		圖 쟈 를 다 ← ? ☞ 토
Exchange Rate Type 10	Exchange Rate Type Description Exchange Rate Type 10	Status
	Create Exchange Rate Type	
Created by		Created Date

### Figure 2.64 Create Exchange Rate Types

- 1. The "Create Exchange Rate Type" page is launched. See Figure 2.64.
- 2. Enter Exchange Rate Type and Exchange Rate Type Description.
- 3. Click the Create Exchange Rate Type pushbutton to save the exchange rate type details.

# 2.4.29 EDIT EXCHANGE RATE TYPE

This sequence explains the process of modifying exchange rate types.

★ 🔋 Edit Exchange Rate Type		
Exchange Rate Type BOT-S	Exchange Rate Type Description BOT Selling	Status Active
	Edit Exchange Rate Type	
Created by DMUSER Last Modified by		Created Date 2013-22-12 Last Modified Date

### Figure 2.65 Edit Exchange Rate Type

- 1. The "Edit Exchange Rate Type" page is launched. See Figure 2.65.
- 2. Select the **Exchange Rate Type** to be modified.
- 3. Modify the retrieved Exchange Rate Type Description.
- 4. Click the Edit Exchange Rate Type pushbutton to save the exchange rate type details.

# 2.4.30 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE EXCHANGE RATE TYPE

This sequence elaborates the process of activating or inactivating exchange rate types. Exchange rate types in Active status can be inactivated and the exchange rates in Inactive status can be activated.

*	Activate/Inactivate Exchange Rate	Туре	i zt	← ?	() ()
	Exchange Rate Type AVG RATE	Status Exchange Rate Type Description Month Average rate Effective From			
		Activate Inactivate			
	Created by GXAVIER Last Modified by DMUSER	Created Date			

#### Figure 2.66 Activate / Inactivate Exchange Rate Type

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Exchange Rate Type" page is launched. See Figure 2.66.
- 2. Select the Exchange Rate Type to be activated / inactivated.
- 3. Enter the **Effective From Date** and click the **Inactivate** pushbutton to inactivate an exchange rate type in Active status.
- 4. Enter the **Effective From Date** and click the **Activate** pushbutton to activate an exchange rate type in Inactive status.

# 2.4.31 CREATE EXCHANGE RATES

This sequence details the process of defining exchange rates between two currencies based on the exchange rate types defined.

Exchange Rate Typ	Description Buying Rate	<b>T</b>	V	/alid From Date	<b>m</b>	Download Rates	
<ul> <li></li></ul>	+ - 0 % 0 0 T	τ.		人口	5 ¥ 2 前 ≫ C ∓ = II AI	<b>v</b>	j
# 🗏 From Currency 🔎	To Currency P	Exchange Rate	Exchange Rate Type	Tolerance %	Tolerance limit		
			BOT Buying	*			
			Curto Data				
			Create Rates				

#### Figure 2.67 Create Exchange Rates

- 1. The "Create Exchange Rate" page is launched. See Figure 2.67.
- 2. Select the Exchange Rate Type Description and enter the Valid From Date in the header.
- 3. Click the **Download Rates** pushbutton to retrieve already defined rates.
- 4. Enter the Exchange Rate along with the From Currency, To Currency and Tolerance % or Tolerance Limit in the multiline.
- 5. Click the Create Rates pushbutton to save the exchange rate details

## 2.4.32 VIEW EXCHANGE RATES BY DATE

This sequence elaborates the process of viewing exchange rates based on the date on which they were defined.

★ 🔋 View Exchange Rates by Date 🔤 🕱 🖶	¤ ← 3		ĸ
From Currency CAD			
To Currency CAD 💌			
Date From 2016-20-04 mm To 2016-20-04 mm			
Exchange Rate Type Description BOT Selling 💌 Get Exchange Rates			
Exchange Rates			
	·	Ω	2
# From Date To Date Exchange Rate Tolerance % Tolerance imit			
1 2016-20-04 2016-20-04 1.0000000			
Rates by Exchange Rate Type Period/Year End Rates			

#### Figure 2.68 View Exchange Rates by Date

- 1. The "View Exchange Rates by Date" page is launched. See Figure 2.68.
- 2. Select the From Currency, To Currency, From Date, To Date and Exchange Rate Type Description in the header.
- 3. Click the **Get Exchange Rates** pushbutton to retrieve the exchange rate values in the multiline.

### 2.4.33 MAINTAIN OU - COMPANY MAPPING

This sequence elaborates the process of mapping organization units to a company.



*		Maintain OU-Company Mapping					24		+	? 🗔	ĸ
	Comp	any Identity									-
			mpany Code 12		Company Name 12						
		0	perator Code 03 💌		Logo File Name 1						
			Status Mapped 💌		Get	details					
-	Org U	nit Details									
44	4	1 -1/1 > > + - 0 # 0	Q T T.	人主义	U X 🛛 🖄 🗶 🖡 🖬 🔳	All		Ŧ			Q
#		Org. Unit #	Org. Unit Name	Station Name			Address	ID 🔎		Descript	tion
1		11	DROUS	AIR INDIA STATION		~	1			Corporat	be
2						~					
		•									•
- 1											-
			Assign		Unassign						
			Created by DMUSER		Created Date 2015-25-1	1					
		Las	t Modified by DMUSER		Last Modified Date 2015-25-1						

#### Figure 2.69 Maintain OU – Company Mapping

- 1. The "Maintain OU-Company Mapping" page is displayed. See Figure 2.69.
- 2. Select the **Company Code** and **Status**.
- 3. Click Get Details to retrieve the organization unit details into the multiline.
- 4. From the **Org Unit Details** multiline, select the organization unit that has to be mapped / unmapped from the company.
- 5. Click **Assign** to map the selected organization units.
- 6. Click **Unassign** to unmap the selected organization units.

### 2.4.34 CREATE QUICK CODES

Quick codes are user-defined values, used to categorize different masters or transactions based on certain characteristics. The basic entities are defined in the system. This activity allows you to define the quick code values for the different entities. These values are used in other business components available in the business process chain. For example, the entities like ""Bank Type", "Status", "Item Type", "Policy Type" and "Location Type" are predefined in the system.

- 1. The **Create Quick Code** page is displayed. See Figure 2.70.
- 2. Use the Entity drop-down list box to select the entity for which the quick codes must be created.
- 3. In the Quick Code Details multiline, enter Quick Code and Value for the quick code.
- 4. Use the Default drop-down list box to indicate whether the value must be displayed as the default for the entity in other business components.

### Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 5 – Account Rule Definition

S. No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI name	Functional Steps
1.	Define Single Sale Account Definition		Account Rule Definition	Set Function Default	<u>Set</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Default</u>	1. Set the functional default value to "No" for single account definition
			Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Set Sales</u> <u>Parameter</u>	2. Set all the parameter of sales to "No" for single account definition.
			Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Sale</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definitio</u> n	3. Enter Sale Account, Sales Return Account and COGS account against Item Account Group or Item Code
2.	Define Multiple Sale Account Definition		Account Rule Definition	Set Function Default	<u>Set</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Default</u>	1. Set the function default value to "Yes" for multiple account definition
			Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Set Sales</u> <u>Parameter</u>	<ol> <li>Set all the applicable sales parameters to "Yes".</li> <li>Set the parameters that are not applicable to "No".</li> </ol>
			Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Sale</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>For each permutation and combination required, map sale account, sales return account and COGS account.</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the account definition</li> </ol>
3.	Define TCD Account (Sale) Definition		Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Set Sales</u> Parameters	<ol> <li>Set all the applicable sales parameters to "Yes".</li> <li>Set the parameters that are not applicable to "No".</li> </ol>
			Account Rule Definition	Create Sale Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>TCD</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>For each permutation and combination required, map TCD account</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the account definition</li> </ol>
4.	Define Single Account for Work Order		Account Rule Definition	Set Function Default	<u>Set</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Default</u>	2. Set the "Consumption accounting based on Parameter" function default to "No"



		Accoun Rule Definiti Accoun Rule	on Account Definition	Parameters Create	for the event work order 1. Enter account code for
		Definiti		<u>Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	Order 2. Enter effective from date
5	Define Multiple Accounts for Work Order	Accoun Rule Definiti	Default	<u>Set Functio</u> n <u>Default</u>	1. Set the "Consumption accounting based on Parameters"
		Accoun Rule Definiti	Consumption	<u>Set</u> <u>Consumption</u> <u>Parameters</u>	1. Set the applicable parameters to "Yes" for the event work order
		Accoun Rule Definiti	Consumption	<u>Create</u> <u>Consumption</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definitio</u> n	<ol> <li>Enter account code         <ul> <li>and effective from</li> <li>date for each</li> <li>combination of the</li> <li>parameter under</li> <li>"Account definition for</li> </ul> </li> </ol>
		Accoun Rule Definiti	Additional	<u>Create</u> <u>Additioal</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>Select finance book and usage type</li> <li>Enter multiline details such as usage id, currency, Dr/Cr and date.</li> <li>For Intra-company accounts, select destination FB in the same company</li> <li>For Inter-company accounts select</li> </ol>
		Accoun Rule Definiti	Additional	DefineUsage	<ol> <li>Fetch the account description using the search criteria</li> <li>Enter usage ID and short description</li> <li>If account description is to be used as usage description, click "Default Account Description"</li> </ol>

		Account Rule Definition	Create Additional Account Definition	<u>Assign Usage</u> <u>to Events</u>	<ol> <li>Fetch usage ID based on the search criteria</li> <li>Fetch the events</li> <li>Map usages to events</li> </ol>
6.	Create Item Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Item Account Definition	<u>Create Item</u> <u>Account</u> <u>definitb</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for item account group and item</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> </ol>
7.	Create TCD Account definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Item Account definition	<u>Create TCD</u> <u>Account</u> <u>definito</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for TCD         code and         variant</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> </ol>
8.	Create Bank / Cash Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Bank / Cash Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Bank / Cash</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for bank / PTT / cash code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the definition</li> </ol>
9.	Create Customer Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Receivable Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Customer</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definitb</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for receivable account / prepayment account / deposit account to the</li> </ol>
10.	Create Internal Customer Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Receivable Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Internal</u> <u>Customer</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for receivable account / prepayment account / deposit account for internal receivable currency based on the BUs involved</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> </ol>
11.	Create Supplier Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Payable Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Supplier</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definitb</u> n	<ol> <li>Map account code for payable account / prepayment account / deposit account to the supplier group</li> </ol>

12.	Create Internal Supplier Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Payable Account Definition	Create Internal Supplier Account Definiton	<ol> <li>Map account code for payable account / prepayment account / deposit account for internal payable currency based on the BUs involved</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the definition</li> </ol>
13.	Create Asset Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Create Asset Account Definition	<u>Create Asset</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Definitb</u> n	<ol> <li>For an asset class, predefined usage and finance book, map account code.</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the definition</li> </ol>
14.	Create Consumption Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Set Consumption Parameters	<u>Set</u> <u>Consumptio</u> n <u>Parameters</u>	2. Set parameters for definition of aircraft and component accounts.
			Create Consumption Account Definition	<u>Create</u> <u>Consumptio</u> n <u>Account</u> <u>Definitb</u> n	<ol> <li>Enter account code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the definition</li> </ol>
15.	Create Service Sale Account Definition	Account Rule Definition	Set Service Sales Parameter	<u>Set Service</u> <u>Sales</u> <u>Parameter</u>	1. Set sales parameter
			Create Service Sale Account Definition	<u>Create Service</u> <u>Sale Account</u> <u>Definito</u> n	<ol> <li>Enter account code</li> <li>Enter effective from date</li> <li>Save the definition</li> </ol>

# 2.5 ACCOUNT RULE DEFINITION

Account Rule Definition is a rule engine that would retrieve account codes during transactions which results in financial postings. The definition of an account rule simplifies the entry of data by retrieving account codes, to facilitate posting of financial entries using appropriate account codes. Account codes retrieval can be done for all transactions except for raising journal vouchers.

# 2.5.1 DEFINE SINGLE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION

## Set Function Defaults

This sequence elaborates the process of setting functional default values for defining account rules of various transactions.

* 🗎 Set Function Defaults	i z	ē	đ	+	? (	0 K
Sales Accounting based on Part Ves V Consumption Accounting based on Parameters Account Material, Resources, and Others separately Resource Accounting applicable for Al Resources						
Set						

### Figure 2.68 Set Function Defaults

- 1. The "Set Function Defaults" page is launched. See Figure 2.68.
- 2. Set the function default "Sales accounting based on Part" to "No" for single account definition.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton and the function default is saved successfully.

### Set Sales Parameter

This sequence explains the process of setting all the additional parameters to "No", in order to create single sale account definitions.

★ 🗎 Set Sales Parameter		国 2 章 4 ← ? □ 国
Sales Parameters Sale Type No V Sale Purpose No V	Delvery Area # No v Receipt Type No v	Customer Account Group # Yes V Reason # No V
TCD Sales Parameters     TCD Type Tax     TCD Type Tax     Delivery Area # No      Sale Type No	Customer Account Group # No v	Sale Purpose No v
	Set	
Create Sale Account Definition		

#### Figure 2.69 Create Sale Account Definition

- 1. The "Set Sale Parameter" page is launched. See Figure 2.69.
- 2. Set all the sales parameters to "No".
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the sales parameters.

### **Create Sale Account Definition**

This sequence specifies the process of defining single sale accounts for specific events without additional parameters.



					≡ x = ₽ +	
Finance Book A		Effecti	ive From 2016-21-04 🛗			
Part Account Group		Der	Description Part # 🖉 ZH820-9:0			
Sales Account P	001001	Sales Return Acc	count Ø 109902	COGS Account P	1001001	
<pre>4 1 - 1/1 &gt; &gt;&gt; + = 0</pre>				. U 🗴 😥 🛍 🖉 🔻 🖷 💷 🗛	<b>.</b>	, D
Sale Order Type	Sale Type	Sales Channel	Delivery Area #	Customer Account Group # P	Sale Purpose	
	<b>v</b>	*	~	*		
4						•
			Create			•

#### Figure 2.70 Create Sale Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Sale Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.70.
- 2. Select the **Finance Book** and the **Part Account Group** from the header.
- 3. Enter the **Effective From Date** as the period start date.
- 4. Enter the **Part #** (if definition is for a specific part).
- 5. Select the applicable events that are required like: Order Based Invoice, Direct Invoice, Credit Note and COGS Events.
- 6. Enter the Sales Account, Sales Return Account and the COGS Account.
- 7. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the account details.

## 2.5.2 CREATE MULTIPLE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION

### Set Function Defaults

This sequence elaborates the process of setting functional default values for defining account rules of various transactions.

* 🗎 Set Function Defaults	≡ ≭ = ¤ ← ? ⊡ 国
Sales Accounting based on Part Ves V Consumption Accounting based on Parameters Ves V Account Material, Resources, and Others separately Ves V Resource Accounting applicable for All Resources V	
Set	

#### **Figure 2.71 Set Function Defaults**

- 1. The "Set Function Defaults" page is launched. See Figure 2.71.
- 2. Set the function default Sales accounting based on Part to "Yes" for multiple sale account definition.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the function defaults.

### **Set Sales Parameter**

This sequence elaborates the process of setting sales parameters in order to define multiple sale accounts based on parameters.



★ 🔋 Set Sales Parameter		国 ≭ 春 ⊄ ← ? ⊡ 国
Sales Parameters Sale Type No  Sale Purpose No	Delivery Area # No ¥ Racept Type No ¥	Customer Account Group # Yes V Reason # No V
TCD Sales Parameters     TCD Type     Tax     TCD Type     Tax     Delivery Area # No     Sale Type     No     No	Customer Account Group # No 🐨	Sale Purpose No 🐨
	Set	
Create Sale Account Definition		

#### Figure 2.72 Set Sales Parameters

- 1. The "Set Sales Parameter" page is launched. See Figure 2.72.
- Set the applicable parameters that affect the account definition to "Yes". Parameters are: Sale Order Type, Sale Type, Sales Channel, Delivery Area Code, Customer Group Code, Sales Purpose, Promotion ID, Receipt Type, Processing Action and Reason Code.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the sales parameter.

### **Create Sale Account Definition**

This sequence explains the process of creating multiple sale accounts based on additional parameters for various events.

Create Sale Account Definition						= x = c ← (	
Finance Book AVEOS	•	Effective From 2016	21-04	Ē			
Part Account Group		Description			Part # D ZHE	20-9:02217	
Applicable Events     Account Definition Details							
Sales Account Ø 1001001		Sales Return Account 👂 1099	12		COGS Account Ø 100	1001	
	O T T			人用目	1 X 😥 🗎 🛛 🗮 🖬 🔳 Al	<b>v</b>	Q
# 🔲 Sale Order Type	Sale Type	Sales Channel	Delivery Area #		Customer Account Group # P	Sale Purpose	
1 🗉	· •		*	*			
4							+
			1				
		Create					
Create TCD Account Definition	View Sale	Account Definition					

#### Figure 2.73 Create Sale Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Sale Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.73.
- 2. Select the **Finance Book** and the **Part Account Group** from the header.
- 3. Enter the **Part Code** (if the definition is specific to a part).
- 4. Select the applicable events that are required like: Order Based Invoice, Direct Invoice, Credit Note and COGS Events.
- 5. Enter the **Sales Account**, **Sales Return Account** and the **COGS Account** for a combination of applicable parameters chosen in the multiline.
- 6. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save the account definition details.

## 2.5.3 CREATE TCD ACCOUNT DEFINITION

### **Set Sales Parameters**

This sequence describes the process of setting additional parameters based on which TCD accounts can be defined.


\star 🔋 Set Sales Pa	arameter		B ≭ 春 ₽ ← ? ⊡ 国
Sales Parameters     TCD Sales Parameters	Sale Type No V Sale Purpose No V	Delwery Area ≠ No ▼ Raceipt Type No ▼	Customer Account Group # Yes V Reason # No V
ICD Sales Parameters	TCD Type Tax V Delivery Area # No V Sale Type No V	Customer Account Group # No 💌	Sale Purpose No 💌
		Set	
Create Sale Account Definition	n		

#### Figure 2.74 Set Sales Parameters

- 1. The "Set Sales Parameters" page is launched. See Figure 2.74.
- 2. Set the applicable parameters to "Yes". The parameters available are: TCD Type, Delivery Area Code, Customer Group Code, Sales Channel, Sale Type, Processing Action, Sale Purpose and Promotion ID.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the TCD parameters.

## **Create TCD Account Definition**

This sequence elaborates the process of defining TCD accounts based on specific parameters.

Finance Book     AVEOS     TCD # P     Description       TCD Type     TCD Variant     Description		
- Account Details		
(4) € [No records to display] ▶ >> + = □ ≤ Ø Å ▼ T,         ↓ □ □ × □ □ → □ ↓ □ ↓		Q
🔹 🗈 Event Supplier Group Receipt At Type GR Category	Mode of Trans	sport
	*	
4		•
Create		

#### Figure 2.75 Create TCD Account Definition

- 1. The "Create TCD Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.75.
- 2. Select the Finance Book and Tax Accounting in Sales Cycle in the header.
- 3. Enter TCD Code and TCD Variant (if required).
- 4. For each combination of the applicable parameters define an Account Code and Effective From Date.
- 5. Click the **Create** pushbutton to define the account definition.

## 2.5.4 CREATE SINGLE ACCOUNT FOR WORK ORDER

## Set Function Defaults

This sequence describes the process of setting parameters for defining single consumption accounts without parameters.



★ 🗎 Set Sales Parameter		== * = ↓ ↓ ? □ ■
Sales Parameters		
Sale Type No 💌	Delivery Area # No 💌	Customer Account Group # Yes 💌
Sale Purpose No 🐨	Receipt Type No 🐨	Reason # No 💌
TCD Sales Parameters		
TCD Type Tax		
Delivery Area # No 💌	Customer Account Group # No 💌	Sale Purpose No 💌
Sale Type No 💌		
	Set	
Create Sale Account Definition		

#### Figure 2.76 Set Function Defaults

- 1. The "Set Function Defaults" page is launched. See Figure 2.76.
- 2. Set the function default **Consumption Accounting based on Parameters** to "No" for single account definition.
- 3. Set the function default **Account Material, Resources, and Others separately** to "Yes" to specify whether the expenditure / revenue are to be posted to different account heads.
- 4. Click the Set pushbutton to set the function defaults.

## Set Consumption Account Parameters

This sequence explains the process of setting all the consumption parameters to "No" for defining single consumption accounts.

		Set Consumption Parameters	.e									x 🖶	₽ ·	<b>⊢</b> ?	6
	_	· 1 - 1/1 ▶ ≫ + = □ ≠ ∅												_	Q
#		Event	Document Class		Document Category		Document Type		Task Type	(4) 110	P	anning Base			
1		A/C Maint, Exe, Ref #	Yes		Yes		No		No		✓ N				
2		A C Plante EXer Nel #	165	*		~		*			· · ·	•			
		4													+
- 0	onsu	mption Parameters for Hangar													
44	4	1 -1/1 > >> + - □ ≠ ◊	Q T T							III All		Ŧ			Q
#		Event	Order Type	Order Cat	egory	Planning	Base				Maintenance	Base			Wc
1		Hangar WO	No	r No		✓ No				*	No				✓ No
2				-		*				*					*
		4													+
- 0	onsu	mption Parameters for Component / Non-O	Component												
-	4	1 - 6 / 6 🕨 🗰 + - 🗇 🗲 🜣	Q T T							III All		Ŧ			Q
=		Event	Order Type	Order Cat	egory	Planning	Base				Maintenance	Base			We
1		Repair Order		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		~				~					*
2		Repair Order for Non-components		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		*				*					*
3		Scheduled WO		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		*				~					*
4		Scheduled WO for Noncomponents		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		*				~					*
5		UnScheduled WO		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		*				~					*
6		Unscheduled WO for Noncomponents		<ul> <li>Yes</li> </ul>		*				*					*
		€													) F
						Set									
Create	Cons	sumption Account Definition													
Creati	Cons														

#### Figure 2.77 Set Consumption Parameters

- 1. The "Set Consumption Parameters" page is launched. See Figure 2.77.
- 2. Set all the applicable parameters to "No" for single account definition.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the consumption parameters.

## **Create Consumption Account Definition**

This sequence elaborates the process of defining single work order account.



_												
*		Create Consumption Account De	inition							III xt 를 다	← ?	
		Finance Book AVEOS	Ŧ	Effective from	n Date		<b>m</b>	Entil	y Accounted Ext	t. Repair-Exchange Cost	Ŧ	
-	Accou	t Definition for Aircraft Maintenance										
		Account # 👂										
44	• [	No records to display] 🕨 🕨 + 🗕 🕻	3 % Ø Ø T T.					22 🖡 🖷 🏢	All	<b>v</b>		Q
		Event	Document Class	Document Category		Document Type		Task Type		Planning Base		
1		A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #		*		*	*			*		
		4										
	Account	nt Definition for Hangar										
	Accou	Account # D										
		Account = p										
44	•	No records to display] 🕨 🗰 🛨 🗕 🖞	7 4 0 C T T					22 🖡 🖷 🗐	All	<b>•</b>		Q
#		Event	Order Type	Order Category	Plannin	g Base			Ma	aintenance Base		
1		Hangar WO 🗸	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		*				~			*
		4										•
-	Accou	nt Definition for Component/Non-Compone	nt									
		Account # P										
44	4	1 -3/6 ▶ >> + - 🗇 🗲 🌣	OT.					22 <b>4 5 1</b>	All	v		Q
#		Event	Order Type	Order Category	Plannin	g Base			Ma	aintenance Base		
1		Repair Order			~				~			*
2		Repair Order for Non-components			*				*			*
3		Scheduled WO	· · · · · ·		*				*			¥
												-
					Create							
		View Aircraft Account Definition			v	iew Component Accour	nt Definition					

#### Figure 2.78 Create Consumption Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Consumption Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.78.
- 2. Select the Finance Book and enter the Effective From Date as a period start date in the header.
- 3. Select the account head for the financial postings associated with aircraft/Hangar and component/non-component in the **Entities Accounted** field.
  - Note: To define aircraft, hangar or component account without parameters, the parameter "Consumption Accounting based on Parameters" must be set to "No" in the "Set Function Defaults" activity of this business component.
- 4. Enter the **Account Code** for the work order in the header.
  - Note: The account code must have been mapped to the finance book in the "Accounting Setup" business component. Also, the account code entered here must be a "Non Auto Posting Account" and should belong to the account group "Expense".
- 5. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the account definition for work order based on aircraft, hangar and component / non-component.

## 2.5.5 CREATE MULTIPLE ACCOUNT FOR WORK ORDER

## **Set Function Defaults**

This sequence describes the process of setting parameters for defining multiple consumption accounts using parameters.

* 🔋 Set Function Defaults	J.\$	₽ ·	<b>←</b> '	? [	ð K
Sales Accounting based on Part Ves V Consumption Accounting based on Parameters Account Material, Resources, and Others separately Resource Accounting applicable for All Resources V					
Set					

#### Figure 2.79 Set Function Defaults

- 1. The "Set Function Defaults" page is launched. See Figure 2.79.
- 2. Set the function default **Consumption Accounting based on Parameters** to "Yes" for multiple account definition.
- 3. Set the function default **Account Material, Resources, and Others separately** to "Yes" to specify whether the expenditure / revenue are to be posted to different account heads.

4. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the function defaults.

## Set Consumption Parameters

This sequence describes the process of setting work order parameters based on multiple work order accounts can be defined.

- C		mption Parameters for Aircraft Maintenar											
44	4	1 -1/1 > >> + - C + C	A T T						1 12 <b>F</b> 11	All		T	
#	V	Event	Document Class		Document Category		Document Type		Task Type		Planning	Base	
1	V	A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #	Yes	*	Yes	*	No	*	No		✓ No		
2				*		*		•			~		
		4											
		mption Parameters for Hangar								_			
ł	_	1 -1/1 > >> + = 🗆 🗲 🔇								All		Ŧ	
*		Event	Order Type	Order Cate	egory	Planning B	kse				Maintenance Base		
											No		~
l.		Hangar WO	No	✓ No		✓ No				*	NO		*
		Hangar WO		<ul><li>✓ No</li><li>✓</li></ul>		✓ No				*			*
		<											
- c	Consu	Hangar WO 4 mption Parameters for Component / Non- 1 - 6 / 6 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	Component						5 x 4 s 1	~		V	*
- C	Consu	mption Parameters for Component / Non-	Component		egory		899		5 <b>2 1 2 1</b>	~		V	*
- C	ionsu	<pre>4 mption Parameters for Component / Non- 1 - 6 / 6 → → + - □ → 4 </pre>	Component Conter Type	•	egory	•	ase		1 20 <b>1 4 1</b>	~	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	~
- C	Consu	mption Parameters for Component / Non     1 - 6 / 6      prot     wert     Repair Order     Repair Order for Non-components	Component 0 Co T T Order Type	Order Cate	egory	▼ Planning B	859		) 20 <b>4 4 1</b>	All	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	~
• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	Consu	4 mption Parameters for Component / Non- 1 - 6 / 6 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10	Component Conformation Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	ngory	V Planning B	258	<b>, e o</b> % 2 (	1 20 <b>4 4 1</b>	All	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	*
1 2 44 1 2 3 4		motion Parameters for Component / Non     1 - 6/6 > >>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	Component Congo Tr Order Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	895Y	V Planning B	ase		1 20 <b>9 9 1</b>	All ~	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	*
C 44 1 2 3 4 5		mption Parameters for Component / Non-     1 - 6 / 6 * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	Component Order Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	ngory	<ul> <li>Planning B</li> <li></li> <li></li> <li></li> </ul>	258		1 2 <b>8 8 1</b>	All •	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	*
• C 44 1 2 3 4 5		mption Parameters for Component / Non- 1 - 6 / 6      m      m      motion Parameters for Component / Non-     fequir Order     Repair Order     Repair Order     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO     Unscheduled WO     Unscheduled WO     Unscheduled WO	Component Order Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	920Y	Planning B V V V	88		1 X 8 9 1	All v	Maintenance Base	<b>v</b>	*
• C 44 1 2 3 4 5		mption Parameters for Component / Non-     1 - 6 / 6 * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	Component Order Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	890Y	Planning B V V V V V V	858	<b>. . . . . .</b>	1 2 <b>8 9 1</b>	All	Maintenance Base	× .	*
• C ••• 1 2 3 4		mption Parameters for Component / Non- 1 - 6 / 6      m      m      motion Parameters for Component / Non-     fequir Order     Repair Order     Repair Order     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO     Unscheduled WO     Unscheduled WO     Unscheduled WO	Component Order Type	<ul> <li>Order Cate</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> <li>Yes</li> </ul>	890Y	Planning B V V V V V V	ase		÷ 22 8 ¥ 1	All	Maintenance Base	<ul> <li>▼</li> </ul>	*

#### Figure 2.80 Set Consumption Parameters

- 1. The "Set Consumption Parameters" page is launched. See Figure 2.80.
- 2. Set the applicable consumption parameters to "Yes". The parameters are: Work Order Type, Work Order Category, Maintenance Location and Cost Type.
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to set the consumption parameters.

## **Create Consumption Account Definition**

This sequence explains the process of defining multiple work order accounts based on specific parameters

	Set Consumption Parameters									** =	4	? [
Consu	Imption Parameters for Aircraft Mainten	ance										
4	1 -1/1 🕨 🕨 🛨 = 🗇 🛠 🌣	C T T,				7		¥ 🕫 🔟	All	Ŧ		۶,
	Event	Document Class		Document Category			Document Type		Task Type			Plan
	A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #	No		✓ Yes		*	Yes		✓ No			✓ No
				*		~			*			~
Consu	Imption Parameters for Hangar											
•	1 -1/1 > > + = ⊡ ≮ ◊					A		# # 00	All	Ŧ		
	Event	Order Type	0	Order Category		Planning Ba	se				Mainter	nance Ba
						No				~	No	
	Hangar WO	No	× 1	No.	~	110						
		No	• I	No	*	110				~		
	4			ło		10				~		
- Consu		n-Component		Vo				¥ = 10	All	▼ ▼	,	
- Consu	4 imption Parameters for Component / No 1 - 6 / 6 → ₩ + - □ ≠ ◊	n-Component	~	lo Drder Category	*			¢r +≈ 010	All		Mainter	
- Consu	4 imption Parameters for Component / No 1 - 6 / 6 → ₩ + - □ ≠ ◊	n-Component	~	Order Category	*	Ŀ		# # II	All		Mainter	
-Consur	<pre>4 mption Parameters for Component / No 1 - 6 / 6 → → + - □ ≠ 0 Event</pre>	n-Component	~	Order Category Yes	¥	Ŀ		# # II	All	<b>v</b>	Mainter	
Consul	<pre>emption Parameters for Component / No 1 - 6 / 6 → → + - □ ≠ ≎ Event Repair Order</pre>	n-Component	•	Order Category Yes	*	Ŀ		4 w 11	All	<b>v</b>	Mainter	nance E
	I - 6 / 6 → W + - C + Component / No     I - 6 / 6 → W + - C + C + C     Event     Repair Order     Repair Order for Non-components     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO	n-Component	•	Drder Category Yes Yes	*	Ŀ		# <b>#</b> II	All	\▼ \ ~	Mainter	nance E
	<pre>emption Parameters for Component / Nor i = 6 / 6 → → + - □ ≠  Fient Repair Order Repair Order Repair Order for Non-components Scheduled WO Scheduled WO For Noncomponents UnScheduled WO For Noncomponents UnScheduled WO For Noncomponents For Noncomponent For N</pre>	n-Component	* * * * *	Drder Category Yes Yes Yes	*	Ŀ		# # H	All	▼ ~ ~	Mainter	nance b
	I - 6 / 6 → W + - C + Component / No     I - 6 / 6 → W + - C + C + C     Event     Repair Order     Repair Order for Non-components     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO     Scheduled WO	n-Component		Order Category Yes Yes Yes Yes	*	Ŀ		* <b>*</b> 11	All	<b>▼</b>	Mainter	nance

Figure 2.81 Create Consumption Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Consumption Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.81.
- 2. Select the **Finance Book** in the header.
- 3. For the combinations of the applicable parameters: Work Order Type, Work Order Category, Maintenance Location and Cost Type, define an Account Code.
- 4. Enter the **Effective From Date** in the multiline.
- 5. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the consumption account definitions.

## 2.5.6 CREATE ADDITIONAL ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence explains the process of creating additional accounts along with usages.

*	Create Additional Account	nt Definition					≣ <i>≍</i>	ē (	3 <b>←</b>	?	
		Finance Book AVE			Usage Type User Defined	T					
	Account Definition Details										
44	(No records to display)	+ = 0 % ¢ ¢ ¥ ¥,		μ.		Al		Ŧ			Q
#	Usage ID 🔎	Usage Short Description	Usage Description	Currency	Account # P	Dr / Cr			Effect	ive From	
1				CAD 🗸		Either			~		
L –											
L –											
L –											
L –											
L –											
L –											
	4										×.
I –											
			Creat	e							
View	Additional Account Definition	Defi	ne Usage		View Default Accounts						
Assig	Usage to Event										

#### Figure 2.82 Create Additional Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Additional Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.82.
- 2. Select the Finance Book in the header.
- 3. Select the Usage Type as "Predefined" or "User Defined"
- 4. Enter the Usage ID, Usage Short Description, Currency, Account #, Dr/Cr and Effective From Date in the multiline.
- 5. For intra-company accounts, select the **Destination Finance Book** of the same company.
- 6. For inter-company accounts, select the Destination Finance Book, Child Company and the Destination Company.
- 7. Click the Create pushbutton to create the additional account definitions.

## Define Usage

This sequence elaborates the process of defining usages based on which additional accounts can be defined.

*		Define Usage							-? 🗔	
	Searc	h Criteria	Account Group REVENUE	ACC)		Account Classification INCOME Account Description	STATEMENT V	5		
	4	1 -1/1 > >> + - C	7 × 0 0 T T				All	<b>v</b>		Q
=	V	Usage ID	Usage Short Description	Usage Description	Account Description					
1	V	CO Susp	COGS Suspense	Usage for COGS Suspense						
2										
			Default Account Descr	iption			Define Usage			
Assig	n Usag	e to Event								

Figure 2.83 Define Usage

- 1. The "Define Usage" page is launched. See Figure 2.83.
- 2. Execute the search criteria to retrieve account details using **Account Group**, **Account Classification**, **Layout Heading** and **Account Description**.
- 3. Click the Get Details pushbutton to retrieve the account descriptions
- 4. Enter the Usage ID, Usage Short Description and the Usage Description in the multiline.
- 5. If the Account Description is to be defaulted as the Usage Description, then click the Default Account Description pushbutton.
- 6. Click the **Define Usage** pushbutton to save the usage details.

## Assign Usage to Event

This sequence explains the process of assigning usages to specific transactions.

*		Assign Usage to Event				1	■ ** ● む ◆	? 🗔
		n Criteria Usage Id Usage Type Account Group In Results	User Defined	Usage Short Description Currency Account Description	•	Usage Description Get		
Ī		1 - 5 / 476 <b>&gt; &gt;&gt; T</b>	3				<b>v</b>	Q
-		Usage ID	Usage Short Description	Usage Description	Account #	Account Description		
1		109902	Freight Expenses	Freight Expenses	109902	Freight Expenses		-
2			Petty Cash	Petty Cash	110000	Petty Cash		- 11
3			A/R Accruals CAD	A/R Accruals CAD	120400	A/R Accruals CAD		- 11
4			A/R Accruals USD	A/R Accruals USD	120410	A/R Accruals USD		
5		120420	A/R Accruals EUR	A/R Accruals EUR	120420	A/R Accruals EUR		*
	Applic	able Events Function	IMS	Transaction Mate	rial Request 🔍	Transaction Type	V	
•		1 -1/1 > >> - T	Υ.				T	Q
		Transaction Type	Type Description					
1		INV_MREQ	Material Request					
				Assign				

#### Figure 2.84 Assign Usage to Event

- 1. The "Assign Usage to Event" page is launched. See Figure 2.84.
- 2. Execute the search criteria with Usage ID, Usage Short Description, Usage Description, Usage Type, Currency, Account Group and Account Description to retrieve usages.
- 3. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the usage details.
- 4. Execute the search criteria with Function, Transaction and Transaction Type to retrieve event details.
- 5. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the event details.
- 6. Select the usages and the applicable events from the respective multilines.
- 7. Click the **Assign** pushbutton to map the usages to the events.

## 2.5.7 CREATE ITEM ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence describes the process of defining a range of item accounts.



Create Item Account Definition	n				E X 를 다	← ?	Ø K
Part Account Group Part # 👂	Consumables 💌	Description Finance Book	Consumable AVE	Effective From	2016-11-04	m	
<ul> <li>Accounting Information</li> </ul>							
Stock Account # 👂	109902	WIP Account # D	001	Stock with Repair Agency Account # 👂	1001001		
Material Lost in Transit Account # 👂	001	Standard Cost Variance Account # 🔎	110000	Stock Adjustment Account # 🔎	001		
Account Details							
📢 🔹 [No records to display] 🕨 👀					<b>v</b>		Q
# Event	Account Type	Account Description	Dr / Cr				
		Found	no rows to display!!!				
		G	eate				
Create TCD Account Definition		Set Purchase TCD Parameters		View Item Account Definition			

#### Figure 2.85 Create Item Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Item Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.85.
- 2. Select the Part Account Group.
- 3. Enter **Part Code** (if definition is specific to an part).
- 4. Enter the **Effective From Date** in the header.
- 5. Enter the Stock Account, WIP Account, Sub Contractor WIP Account, Material Lost In Transit Account, Purchase **Price Variance Account** and **Stock Adjustment Account**.
- 6. Select the account details in the multiline.
- 7. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save the account definition details.

## **Create TCD Account Definition**

This sequence explains the process of defining purchase TCD accounts with specific parameters.

Create TCD Account Definition						=	≠ ≣	₽ ←	? 🐼 🕻	
Finance Book AVEOS TCD Type Tax			TCD # P 5-SR TCD Variant 6%		Descriptio Descriptio					
Account Details										
$\underbrace{}_{\bullet} \underbrace{}_{\bullet} \underbrace{1}_{\bullet} \underbrace{1}_{$							•		Q	
# Event	Supplier Group	Receipt At	Туре	GR Category		Mode of Trans	portation			
1 All 🗸	*	•	*		*				~	
€									+	
			Create							
View TCD Account Definition										

#### Figure 2.86 Create TCD Account Definition

- 1. The "Create TCD Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.86.
- 2. Select the **Finance Book** in the header.
- 3. Enter the **TCD Code** and **TCD Variant** in the header.
- 4. For combinations of parameters, enter an Account Code and Effective From Date.
- 5. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the item account definitions.



## 2.5.8 CREATE BANK CASH ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence elaborates the process of defining bank cash accounts.

			Finance Book AVE 💌						
Ac	cour	t Definition Details							
		1 - 5 / 6 🕨 🗰 🛨 🗖	4 0 C T T				All	<b>v</b>	۶.
*		Bank/Cash/PTT #	Description	Currency	Bank Cash PTT Account # 🔎	Bank Charges Account # $\wp$	Effective From		
		4561	axis bank	CAD					-
2		BMO CAD PAYROLL	BMO Payroll CAD	CAD					
3		HARRIS USD GENERAL	HARRIS General USD	USD					
		HDFC	HDFC	CAD					
5	13	IBQ-FD-QAR	IBQ-FD-QAR	USD					

#### Figure 2.87 Create Bank Cash Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Bank Cash Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.87.
- 2. Enter the Bank Cash PTT Account Code and other details in the multiline.
- 3. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the account definitions.

## 2.5.9 CREATE PAYABLES ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence explains the process of defining supplier payables, prepayment and deposit accounts.

Create Su	upplier Ac	count Definition			≣ ≭ ē ⊄ ? ⊡ ⊠				
		Finance Book AVE 💌	Supplier Group DOHA ACCOMODA	ATION V	Description Doha Accomodation				
Account Definition Details									
44 4 1 - 1	1/1 🕨	• + - 0 ≠ o € T T.			Q V IA				
# 🗉 Curre	ency	Supplier Payables Account # D	Supplier Prepayment Account # D	Supplier Deposits Account # D	Effective From				
1 🖾 CAD	~	001	001	110000					
2 🖾 CAD	*								
			Create						
Create TCD Accoun Create Internal Sup		ł	View Supplier Account Definition	View Default Accounts					

#### Figure 2.88 Create Payables Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Supplier Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.88.
- 2. Select the Finance Book and the Supplier Group in the header
- 3. Select the **Currency** in the multiline.
- 4. Enter Supplier Payables Account Code, Supplier Prepayment Account, Supplier Deposits Account Code and the **Effective From Date**.
- 5. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save account definition details.

## **Create Internal Supplier Account Definition**

This sequence elaborates the process of defining internal supplier accounts.



* 🗎	Create Internal Supplie	er Account Definition			= x	≣ ₽ ← ? ⊡ ⊡
-Accour	nt Definition Details					
	No records to display] 🕨 🕨	+ - 0 % 0 0 T T		A M D X	🗹 🗇 🗶 🗰 💷 🖬	Q ۲
# 8	Currency	Source Business Unit	Destination Company	Destination Business Unit	Supplier Payables Account # D	Supplier Prepayment Accou
1	CAD	✓ AVBU	× •	12 🗸		
	4					
				Create		
View Interna	al Supplier Account					

#### Figure 2.89 Create Internal Supplier Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Internal Supplier Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.89.
- 2. Select the Currency, Source Business Unit, Destination Company, Destination Business Unit, Supplier Payables Account Code, Supplier Prepayment Account Code, Supplier Deposits Account Code and Effective From Date in the multiline.
- 3. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save the account definition details.

## 2.5.10 CREATE RECEIVABLES ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence explains the process of defining customer receivable, prepayment and deposit accounts.

	Crea	ate Custo	mer A	account Definition			≣ ≭ ē ⊄ ? ⊡ ⊠		
-				Finance Book AVEOS V	Customer Account Group # BELINCO	Customer Account Group D	escription Bedek Lingyun (Yichang) A/c Mainte		
-	lccou	nt Definitio	n Detai	ls					
44	4	1 - 1 / 1	Þ	+ - 0 % 0 % Y X			Q V I		
		Currency		Customer Receivable Account # $P$	Customer Prepayment Account # D	Customer Deposits Account # 🔎	Effective From		
1		CAD	~	109902					
2		CAD	~						
	Greate								
	View Dustomer Account Definition     Create TCD Account Definition     View Default Accounts       Create Internal Customer Account								

#### **Figure 2.90 Create Receivables Account Definition**

- 1. Click the "Create Customer Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.90.
- 2. Select the Finance Book and the Customer Group Code in the header.
- 3. Select the Currency, Customer Payables Account Code, Customer Prepayment Account, Customer Deposits **Account Code** and the **Effective From Date** in the multiline.
- 4. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save the account definition details.

## **Create Internal Customer Account Definition**

This sequence describes the process of defining internal customer accounts.

1		Create Internal Custom	ier	Account Definition					<u>≡</u> ≭		<b>1</b>	⊢ ?	6	5
	Accou	nt Definition Details												
l E		[No records to display] 🕨 🕨	I	+ - 0 % 0 C T T.				2 🗎 🎫 💻 📾 💷 🗛		Ŧ			<u>م</u>	1
		Currency		Source Business Unit	Destination Company	1	Destination Business Unit	Customer Receivable Account # $P$			CL	istomer i	Prepaymen	÷
1		CAD	~	AVBU 🗸	~	1	12 🗸							
		4											Þ	
Ι.							Create							
Vi	w Interr	al Customer Account												

#### Figure 2.91 Create Internal Customer Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Internal Customer Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.91.
- 2. Select the Currency, Source Business Unit, Destination Company, Destination Business Unit, and other details in the multiline.
- 3. Click the Create pushbutton to save the account definition details.

#### 2.5.11 CREATE ASSET ACCOUNT DEFINITION

This sequence explains the process of defining asset accounts.

*	🖹 Create Asset Account Definition 🔚 🛪 👼 🛱 🔶 ? 🖬 🗖										
-	Accou	Asset Class # CMC-BDG8	Q 💌		Description Building Equipment CMC		Finance Book AVE	•			
	4	1 -7/8 > >> + - 🗗 🗲 🕸	Q T T				All	T	Q		
		Usage	Account # D	Effective From							
1		Capital Maintenance Expenditure									
2		Cumulative Depreciation-CME									
3		Depreciation-CME									
4		Capitalization Asset									
5		Depreciation									
6		Cumulative Depreciation									
7		Capital Work In Progress							Ψ		
- 1											
	Greate										
View	View Asset Account Definition										

#### Figure 2.92 Create Asset Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Asset Account Definition" page is launched. See Figure 2.92.
- 2. Select the Asset Class Code and Finance Book in the header.
- 3. For the Usage in the multiline, enter the Account Code and Effective From Date.
- 4. Click the **Create** pushbutton to save the account definition details.

## 2.5.12 CREATE CONSUMPTION ACCOUNT DEFINITION

#### **Set Consumption Parameters**

This sequence explains the process of setting consumption parameters.

		Set Consumption Parameters											] x;	ē ₽	÷ '	? 0	0
- 0		nption Parameters for Aircraft Maintenance															
44	•	1 -1/1 > >> + - C + Q	O T T						<b>前</b> 22	# # III	All			Ŧ			Q
#		Event	Document Class		Document Category		Document Type		Task T	/pe			Planning	Base			
1		A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #	No	*	Yes	*	No	*	No			*	No				
2				~		~		*				~					
		•															۱.
_																	_
- C		nption Parameters for Hangar															
44		1-1/1 > >> + = 🗆 🗲 🕸	O T T						ii ≫	# # II	Al			•			Q
#		Event	Order Type	Order Cate	egory	Planning E	ase					Maintenan	ice Base				Wc
1		Hangar WO	No 👻	No	*	No					*	No				~	No
2			*		•						~					~	
		•															•
- C	onsur	nption Parameters for Component / Non-Co	mponent														
44	•	1-6/6 🕨 🗰 🛨 = 🗂 🗲 🔿	Q T T.					A 🗉 🛛 🗙 🖂	11 12	# # II	All			Ŧ			Q
#		Event	Order Type	Order Cate	egory	Planning B	lase					Maintenar	nce Base				We
1		Repair Order	*	Yes	*						*					~	
2		Repair Order for Non-components	~	Yes	•						~					*	
3		Scheduled WO	*	Yes	~						~					~	
4		Scheduled WO for Noncomponents	*	Yes	~						*					*	
5		UnScheduled WO	*	Yes	*						*					*	
6		Unscheduled WO for Noncomponents	*	Yes	•						~					~	
_		4															•
						Set											
						Set											
Create	Consu	mption Account Definition															
	_														_	_	_

#### Figure 2.93 Set Consumption Parameters

- 1. The "Set Consumption Parameters" page is displayed. See Figure 2.93.
- 2. In the Consumption Parameters for Aircraft Maintenance multiline, specify whether document type, document category, , planning base, maintenance base/reporting station, work station, usage type, visit category, aircraft model, aircraft ownership, job type and WO class must be included while defining an aircraft account.

- 3. In the **Consumption Parameters for Hangar** multiline, specify the information that has to be included while defining a hangar account.
- 4. Similarly, in the **Consumption parameters for Component/Non-Component** multiline, specify the information that has to be included while defining a component account.
- 5. Click **Set** to set the consumption parameter.

## **Creating Consumption Account Definition**

This sequence explains the process of defining consumption accounts.

* 🗎	Create Consumption Account De	inition				□ x = □ +	? 🗔
- Accord	Finance Book AVEOS	•	Effective from Date		Entity Accounte	d Ext. Repair-Exchange Cost	v
	Account # D						
	•						
	[No records to display]	7 4 <b>0 0 T T</b>				•	Q
# 8	Event	Document Class	Document Category	Document Type	Task Type	Planning Base	
1	A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #		~	*	*	*	
	4						•
- Accou	unt Definition for Hangar						
	Account # P						
44 4	[No records to display] > >> + - (	3 4 0 0 T T				<b>v</b>	Q
. 8	Event	Order Type	Order Category	Planning Base		Maintenance Base	
1 🗉	Hangar WO	~	~			,	~
	4						•
- Accou	unt Definition for Component/Non-Compone	nt					
	Account # P						
	1-3/6 + + + - 0 + 0					<b>v</b>	Q
		Order Type	Order Category	Planning Base		1	2
				-		Maintenance Base	
	Repair Order		~			*	*
	Repair Order for Non-components		~			·	*
3	Scheduled WO	*	~			·	*
	<						•
			Cr	eate			
	View Aircraft Account Definition			View Component Accou	nt Definition		
	them and the second permon			view component Accou			

#### Figure 2.94 Create consumption account definition

- 1. Select the "Create Consumption Account Definition" link.
- 2. The "Create Consumption Account Definition" page appears. See Figure 2.94.
- 3. Select the **Finance book** code.
- 4. Enter the date from which the consumption account definition is effective.
- 5. Select the account head for the finance entries associated with the aircraft / hangar / component / non-component in the Entities Accounted.
- 6. Enter the account definition details for an aircraft in the Account Definition for Aircraft Maintenance multiline.
- 7. Enter the account definition details for a hangar in the Account Definition for Hangar multiline.
- 8. Enter the account definition details for a component in the **Account Definition for Component** / Non-Component multiline.
- 9. Click **Create** to create the consumption account.

## 2.5.13 CREATE SERVICE SALE ACCOUNT DEFINITION

### Set Service Sales Parameter

This sequence explains the process of setting parameters based on which service sales accounts are to be defined.



* 🔋 Set Service Sales Parameter	□ x 등 다 ← ? □ <
Service Sales Parameters	
Customer Account Group No 💌	Maintenance Base No 💌
Work Center No 💌	Order Currency Yes 💌
Sale Type No 🐨	Order Category Yes 💌
Execution Category No 💌	
Set	
Create Service Sale Account Definition	

#### Figure 2.95 Set Service Sales Parameter

- 1. The "Set Service Sales Parameter" page appears. See Figure 2.95.
- 2. Specify whether **customer group**, **maintenance base**, **work center order category** and Order Currency must be included while defining a service sales account.
- 3. Click **Set** to set the service sales parameter.

## **Creating Service Sale Account Definition**

This sequence explains the process of defining service sale accounts.

	Crea	ate Service Sale Account Definition					■ x ● 다 ←	? 🗟 🖪			
	Accou	Finand Finand	e Book AVEOS 🔻			Entity Accounted Ext. Repair-Exchange Co	ost 💌				
		Service Sale Account 👂 001		COSR Account 👂	001	Effective from Date	2016-03-04	(1)			
44	•	1 - 2 / 2 <b>) )) + = 0 / 0 0</b>	Τ. Τ.				T	Q			
#		Customer Account Group <b>P</b>	Order Currency	Maintenance Base	Work Center		Sale Type				
1		IRAN	USD 🗸	· ·		*					
2			*	*		*					
		1									
-		4						•			
	Create										
View	Tew Service Sale account Definition										

#### Figure 2.96 Create Service Sale Account Definition

- 1. The "Create Service Sale Account Definition" page appears. See Figure 2.96.
- 2. Select the **Finance Book** code.
- 3. Select the Entity Accounted account head.
- 4. Enter the account details in the Account Definition details group box.
- 5. Click **Create** to create the service sale account.



### Theme Enterprise Setup: Scenario 6 – Initial Balance Entry

S. No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1.	Maintain and Exclude Transactio n Type for Tax Book	Finance Manager	Finance Book Processing	Maintain / Exclude Transactio n Type	Maintain / Exclude Transaction Type for Tax Book	<ol> <li>Enter the business function group, function and status.</li> <li>Enter the effective date from which the details should be included / excluded in tax book.</li> <li>Execute "Get Details" task to retrieve the transaction type and description, which should be included/ excluded in tax book.</li> <li>Include the transaction.</li> </ol>
2.	Post Transactions to Tax Book	Finance Manager	Finance Book Processing	Post Transaction s to Tax Book	Post Transaction to Tax Book	<ol> <li>Enter the finance book, financial year and financial period.</li> <li>Post transactions.</li> </ol>
3.	General Ledger Voucher Generation.	Finance Manager	Finance Book Processing		Post Transaction to Tax Book	4. Post transactions of each BPC into FS posting table online or through batch processing.
4	Review Financial Statements	Finance Manager	Finance Book Processing	Review Financial Statement s	<u>Review</u> <u>Financial</u> <u>Statements</u>	<ol> <li>Drill-down analysis from financial statements up to the transaction level.</li> <li>Trend Analysis through multiple grouping options         <ul> <li>Annual, Semi</li> <li>Annual, Quarters, Months</li> </ul> </li> </ol>

## **2.6 MAINTAIN EXCLUDE TRANSACTION TYPE FOR TAX BOOK**

This sequence elaborates the process of including or excluding specific transaction entries to be posted to a tax book.

*	D	Maintain Transaction Type	e for TAX Book				7	Ē	¢. ¢	<b>←</b> '	? 🖪	ā 🖪
		Business Function Group Benef	its Function	▼ Fun	ction All 🔻		Status Include Get D					_
	rans	Effective Date 14-0	07-2016 🛗									
4		1 - 2 / 2 <b>&gt; &gt;&gt; - T</b> Tx				₽ 🕫 🔟 🗛 II		Ŧ				Q
#		Function	Transaction Type	Description	Effective From Date							
1		HRMSPYACT	SAL_ACT	Salary Accounting	14-07-2016							
2		HRMSPYACT	SAL_ACTREV	salary accounting reversal	14-07-2016							
			Exclude			Include						-
Attac	h Note	s										-

#### Figure 2.97 Maintain Exclude Transaction Type for Tax Book

- 1. The "Maintain Exclude Transaction Type For Tax Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.97.
- 2. Select the Business Function Group, Function and Status in the header.
- 3. Enter the **Effective Date**.
- 4. Click the **Get Details** pushbutton to retrieve the transaction details.
- 5. Select the Transaction Type in the multiline.
- 6. Click the **Include** pushbutton to include the transaction types in the tax book.
- 7. Click the **Exclude** pushbutton to exclude the transaction types from the tax book.

## 2.6.1 POST TRANSACTIONS TO TAX BOOK

This sequence describes the process of posting transactions to tax book from a finance book, in a specific financial year /period.

★	74	ē	+	?	[0 K
Finance Book Finance Book Finance Book Financial Period					
Post					

#### Figure 2.98 Post Transaction to Finance Book

- 1. The "Post Transactions to Tax Book" page is launched. See Figure 2.98.
- 2. Select the Finance Book, Financial Year and Financial Period.
- 3. Click the **Post** pushbutton to post the transactions to FBP.

## 2.6.2 REVIEWING FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

This sequence describes the process of analyzing the financial position of the company by online review of financial statements like Trial balance, Balance Sheet and Income Statements

Review Fina	ancial Statements							74	● ☆ ← '	?
Trial Balance B	Balance Sheet Income Statement	Income Statement (MAC) Adhe	C							
Com Additional Dis	apany AVEOS 💌	Finance Book AVEOS	•	Pe	riod Horizon 31De	c15-31Dec16 🔻	As on 💌	02-08-2016		
	oup By Annual 🔻	Net Bal	ance							
			c	iow Details						
			SI	low Details						
6 등 🗟 🕅	510.7 011.44.0									
	EUS meeding 11.0									
				Onenir	n Balanca	Max	vement	Closin	a Balance	
Account Code	Description		Account Group		g Balance Credit		vement		g Balance Credit	
Account Code	Description Freight Expenses		Account Group EXPENSES	Openir Debit 0.00	Credit	Debit	Credit	Debit	Credit	00
Account Code 109902 11000				Debit	Credit 0.0	Debit 36904.96	Credit 6442.76	Debit 30462.20	Credit 0.0	
109902 11000	Freight Expenses		EXPENSES	Debit 0.00	Credit 0.0	Debit 36904.96 0 4.00	Credit 6442.76 6.25	Debit 30462.20 0.00	Credit 0.0 2.2	25
109902 11000 11002	Freight Expenses SALES ACCOUNT		EXPENSES	Debit 0.00	Credit 0.00 0.00 0.00	Debit 36904.96 4.00 31087.31	Credit 6442.76 6.25 0.00	Debit 30462.20 0.00 31087.31	Credit 0.0 2.2 0.0	25 00
109902 11000 11002 200202	Freight Expenses SALES ACCOUNT COST OF GOODS SOLD		EXPENSES REVENUE EXPENSES	Debit 0.00	Credit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00	Debit           0         36904.96           0         4.00           0         31087.31           0         277.77	Credit 6 6442.76 6 6.25 0.00 7 0.00	Debit 30462.20 0.00 31087.31 277.77	Credit 0.0 2.2 0.0 0.0	25 00 00
109902 11000 11002 200202 411100	Freight Expenses SALES ACCOUNT COST OF GOODS SOLD Depreciation Account		EXPENSES REVENUE EXPENSES EXPENSES	Debit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00	Credit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00	Debit           0         36904.96           0         4.00           0         31087.31           0         277.77           0         137101.15	Credit 6 6442.76 6 6.25 0.00 7 0.00 6 434864.60	Debit 30462.20 0.00 31087.31 277.77 0.00	Credit 0.0 2.2 0.0 0.0 297763.4	25 00 00 45
109902 11000 11002 200202 411100 411200	Freight Expenses SALES ACCOUNT COST OF GOODS SOLD Depreciation Account Material Revenue CAD		EXPENSES REVENUE EXPENSES EXPENSES REVENUE	Debit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00	Credit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00	Debit           0         36904.96           0         4.00           0         31087.31           0         277.77           1         37101.15           0         0.000	Credit 6442.76 6.25 0.00 0.00 434864.60 234884.50	Debit 30462.20 0.00 31087.31 277.77 0.00 0.00	Credit 0.0 2.2 0.0 0.0 297763.4 234884.5	25 00 00 45
109902	Freight Expenses       SALES ACCOUNT       COST OF GOODS SOLD       Depreciation Account       Material Revenue CAD       Material Revenue USD		EXPENSES REVENUE EXPENSES EXPENSES REVENUE REVENUE	Debit           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000           0.000	Credit 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.	Debit           0         36904.96           0         4.00           0         31087.31           0         277.77           137101.15         0.000           0         0.000	Credit 6442.76 6.25 0.00 0.00 434864.60 234884.50 5000.00	Debit 30462.20 0.00 31087.31 277.77 0.00 0.00 0.00	Credit 0.0 2.2 0.0 0.0 297763.4 234884.5 5000.0	25 00 15 50

#### **Figure 2.99 Review Financial Statements**

- 1. The "Review Financial Statements" page is launched. See Figure 2.99.
- 2. Select the Finance Book, Financial Year and Financial Period.
- 3. Click the **Post** pushbutton to post the transactions to FBP.
- 4. Click **Trial Balance** pushbutton to review Trial Balances.
- 5. Click the **Balance Sheet** pushbutton to review Balance Sheet.
- 6. Click the Income Statement pushbutton to review Income Statements.
- 7. Click the **Adhoc** pushbutton to review a particular account code or cost center / combination of both.
- 8. Click the Show Details pushbutton to retrieve search details in the multiline.

#### **To review Trial Balance**

In this section the system displays the trial balances by default on launch of this page. This is based on the default search criteria which can be further changed by the user. *See Figure 2:100.* 

- 1. Provide the **Company**, **Finance Book**, **Period Horizon** and **As On** details based on which you wish to retrieve trial balance details in the multiline.
- 2. In the Additional Display Option group box select the Group By to group the Trial Balance Records as per Annual, **Semil Annual**, **Quarters** or **Months.**
- 3. Select the **Net Balance** check box to retrieve net balances for the Trial Balance records

#### To review balance sheet

This section enables the review of Balance Sheets.

- 1. Provide the **Company**, **Finance Book**, **Period Horizon**, **As On**, **Layout ID** and **Schedules / Groups** based on which you wish to retrieve balance sheet details in the multiline.
- 2. In the Additional Display Option group box select the Group By to group the Balance Sheet Records as per Annual, **Semi Annual**, **Quarters** or **Months**.
- 3. Use the drop-down list box to select the basis on which you wish to compare financial data in the **Comparison** whether **Previous Years** or **Previous Periods.**
- 4. Select the YTD check box to retrieve net balances for the balances from the beginning of the financial year within which the system date falls.

20



#### To review income statement

This section enables the review of Income Statements.

- 1. Provide the **Company**, **Finance Book**, **Period Horizon**, **As On**, **Layout ID** and **Schedules / Groups** based on which you wish to retrieve balance sheet details in the multiline.
- 2. In the Additional Display Option group box select the Group By to group the Balance Sheet Records as per Annual, **Semi Annual**, **Quarters** or **Months**.
- 3. Use the drop-down list box to select the basis on which you wish to compare financial data in the **Comparison** whether **Previous Years** or **Previous Periods.**
- 4. Select the **YTD** check box to retrieve net balances for the balances from the beginning of the financial year within which the system date falls.

#### To review adhoc

This section enables the use of Adhoc Search to retrieve a wide range of information such as Financial Year, Finance book, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code, Amount and so on.

1. Provide the **Company**, **Finance Book**, **Period Horizon**, **Account Code Range**, **and Cost Center Range** based on which you wish to retrieve records in the multiline.you wish to retrieve records in the multiline.

# BUDGETING

Budget is a business forecast or projection based on a number of parameters like past performance, market situation, company's opportunities and so on. An account budget is the budget / limit set for each of the account codes. The "Account Based Budget" business component is an effective budgeting tool, by which expenditures can be controlled and tracked. Similarly, revenues can be also planned and optimized. This facility for planning, budgeting and tracking would help to create a "Revenue and Expenditure" budget for the future based on the current year's actuals.

## Theme Budgeting: Scenario 1 – Account Based Budget Control and Analysis

S No	Flow of	Primary	Component	Activity	UI Name	Functional Steps
	Events	Actor(s)	Name	Name		
1	Maintain	Finance	Account	Maintain	<u>Maintain</u>	1. Enter the finance book, currency,
	Account	Manager	Based Budget	Account	<u>Account</u>	financial year / period, control
	Analysis			Analysis	<u>Analysis</u>	action,
	Budget			Budget	<u>Budget</u>	2. Select the account code from/
						to, description, account group,
						currency, analysis # from/to.
						3. Enter the budget amount for
						the account code - analysis code
						combination.

# **3.1 ACCOUNT BASED BUDGET CONTROL AND ANALYSIS**

Account budgets can be defined for exercising control and for the purpose of analysis. The control that must be exercised when the budget is exceeded can also be set. Analysis and sub-analysis codes can be defined for analyzing financial figures in another dimension.

## 3.1.1 MAINTAINING ACCOUNT ANALYSIS BUDGET

This sequence explains the process of recording the budget details for an organization unit based on the account code and analysis code. Using this page you can also modify the existing budget details for the organization unit.

1. Select the Maintain Account Analysis Budget link under the Account Based Budget business component. The Maintain Account Analysis Budget page appears. *See Figure 3.1.* 

			Finance Book AVEOS		Financial year 31 DE	C 2015 - 31 DEC 2016	▼ Financial Perio	d	•
	Form	rch Criteria	Control Action Hold	¥					
	Sear	ren entena	Account Code From		To		Descriptio	n	
			Account Group EXPEN	SES 💌	Currency CAD	•			
			Analysis Code From		То				
	Budg	get Informatio	n 7 > > + = 0 +	OOTT		L.		<b>.</b>	
ŧ				Account Code	Description	Analysis Code	Analysis Code Description	Budget Amount	Acco
	E	31 DEC 201	5 - 31 DEC 2016	109902	Freight Expenses	1100	TCD		EXPE
	E	31 DEC 201	5 - 31 DEC 2016	109902	Freight Expenses	1110	Flight contract		EXPE
		31 DEC 201	5 - 31 DEC 2016	109902	Freight Expenses	BCA	BCA		EXPE
1 2 3	E		- 31 DEC 3016	109902	Freight Expenses	CTS	General Operations		EXPER
1 2 3	8	31 DEC 201	5 - 31 DEC 2016						EXPEN
		31 DEC 201	5 - 31 DEC 2016	200202	Depreciation Account				EXPER

#### Figure 3.1 Maintaining account analysis budget

- 2. Select the **Finance Book, Financial Year #** and the **Financial Period** for which the account-analysis budget must be recorded.
- 3. Set the **Control Action** to "Hold" or "Ignore".

• Hold – Select this option, if the "**Budget Amount"** entered must not exceed the budget set for the account code- analysis code combination.

▶ Ignore - Select this option, if the "**Budget Amount**" entered can exceed the budget set for the account code- analysis code combination.

- 4. In the Search Criteria group-box, enter the Account Code From, Account Code To, Description, Account Group, **Currency**, **Analysis From** and **Analysis To**.
  - > Note: If the control action is set to "Hold", then ensure the following:
    - The "Budget Amount" entered or modified is not greater than the budget amount set for account code-analysis code combination.
    - The total budget amount set for the financial period must be less than or equal to the budget amount set for the financial year.
- 5. Click the Search pushbutton to retrieve the account code analysis code details.
- 6. In the Budget Information multiline, enter the Budget Amount for the account code analysis code.

7. Click the Maintain Budget pushbutton to save the budget details.



## Theme Budgeting: Scenario 2 – Maintain Analysis Rule Definition

S No	Flow of	Primary	Component	Activity	UI Name	Functional Steps
	Events	Actor(s)	Name	Name		
1	Maintain Analysis Rule Definition	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Maintain Analysis Rule Definition	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Analysis</u> <u>Rule</u> <u>Definition</u>	<ol> <li>Select the Company Code and the event</li> <li>Enter the analysis code, Search by and As on date.</li> <li>Enter the Analysis Rule Definitions.</li> </ol>



## **3.2 MAINTAIN ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION**

The analysis Code retrieval is based on the following hierarchy rule:

If for any transactions triggered for the Account Code viz., Revenue or Expense account type and has a mapping to analysis code, then such analysis code shall be picked up which is defined in **Maintain Analysis Rule Definition** page even if for the same transaction Aircraft to Analysis Code mapping is available.

If analysis code is not defined in **Maintain Analysis Rule Definition** page, then application shall pick up analysis code from Aircraft to Analysis Code mapping.

If Aircraft to Analysis Code mapping is not available then application shall retrieve default Analysis code mapped to the account code.

## 3.2.1 MAINTAINING ANALYSIS RULE DEFINITION

This activity retrieves the Analysis Code for M&E transactions based on an Analysis Rule Definition. You can also view the existing analysis rule definition as on date.

1. Select the Maintain Analysis Rule Definition activity under the Account Based Budget business component. The Maintain Analysis Rule Definition page appears. *See Figure 3.2.* 

*	D)	Maintain Analysis Rule Definition					7\$		- ?	ā,
@ M	aintain	O View								
		Company Code FB1	×	Event	All	T				
	earch	Analysis Code 👂		Search By	Aircraft Reg # 🔻 N101	P	As On Date 03/04/2017	7	100	Î
				s	earch					
	nalys	is Rule Definition Details								
	•	1 -3/3 🕨 🗰 🕂 🗖 🛠	T T <sub>x</sub>			📋 💴 📮 👘 🛛 Al		•		Q
#		Event	Aircraft Reg. # 🔎	Shop Job Type	Execution Category	Work Center #	Asset Location Code 🌡	p		An
1		A/C Maint. Exe. Ref #	N101	~	•	~				СТ
2			N101	*	*		AMYULBAN3			CT
3			N101	*	*		AMYULOPTO			СТ
4		*		*	*	*				
		<								>
					Save					

#### Figure 3.2 Maintaining analysis rule definition

- 2. Select the Maintain or View radio button in order to maintain or view the analysis rules respectively.
- 3. Select the **Company Code** and the **Event** for which the analysis rules must be defined or viewed.
- 4. In the Search Criteria group-box, enter the Analysis Code, Search By and As On Date.
- 5. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the Analysis Rule Definition details.

In the Analysis Rule Details multiline, select the Event, Shop Job Type, Execution Category and Work Center #.

- 6. Enter the Aircraft Reg. #, Asset Location Code, Analysis Code, Effective From Date and Effective To Date for the Analysis Rule.
- 7. Click the **Save** pushbutton to define, edit and view the active Analysis Rules.
- 8. Click the Save pushbutton to define, edit and view the active Analysis Rules.

# RECONCILIATION OF FINANCIAL TRANSACTIONS

Reconciliation is the process of keeping track and settling discrepancies of the transactions that are posted into multiple finance books.

At any point of time in a business operation, differences are bound to arise between the balances as per the bank statement and the company's books of accounts. These differences arise due to the time lag in processing transactions. The transactions that are available in both the bank statement and the company's books of accounts can be reconciled manually or automatically. The un-reconciled transactions can be viewed as additions or deductions to bank balance.

Apart from bank reconciliation, inter-company and intra-company reconciliation can also be carried out, where in, finance books within companies as well as across companies are reconciled.

## Theme Reconciliation of Financial Transactions: Scenario 1 – Bank Reconciliation

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1	Automatic reconciliation when bank statement is manually created	Finance Manager	Bank Reconciliation	Create Bank Statement	<u>Create Bank</u> <u>Statement</u>	1. Create a bank statement through manual entry.
				Reconcile Transactions	<u>Reconcile</u> <u>Transactio</u> s	<ol> <li>Reconcile transactions in the bank statement and bank book based on Check No., Prefix, Amount and Bank Code.</li> </ol>
				Confirm Reconciliation	<u>Confirm</u> <u>Reconciliatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Confirm all transactions that have been reconciled in a bank statement, as on a specific date.</li> <li>Retrieve details for the bank account number as on a specified date.</li> <li>Display transactions without reference numbers that constitute "Addition to Bank Balance" and "Deduction to Bank Balance".</li> </ol>
2	Manual reconciliation without bank charges when the bank statement is created manually	Finance Manager	Bank Reconciliation	Create Bank Statement	<u>Create Bank</u> <u>Statement</u>	1. Create a bank statement through manual entry.

# ramco

				Reconcile Transactions	Reconcile Transaction	<ol> <li>Reconciliation of entries within the bank statement - reconciliation done between opposite transaction types.</li> <li>Reconciliation of entries within the bank book -reconciliation done between opposite transaction types.</li> <li>Reconciliation of entries in the bank statement and bank book based on selection and matching transaction types based on</li> </ol>
3	Unreconcile	Finance	Bank	Create Bank	Create Bank	<ul> <li>specific parameters of both the entities.</li> <li>4. Reconciliation of entries in the bank statement and bank book based on tag group and matching transaction types based on specific parameters of both the entities.</li> <li>1. Create a bank statement</li> </ul>
	and generate new bank statements for the statements that have been reconciled with defect entries	Manager	Reconciliation	Statement	<u>Statement</u>	1. Create a bank statement through manual entry.
				Unreconcile Transactions	<u>Unreconcile</u> <u>Transactio</u> ด	<ol> <li>Unreconcile all transactions for the bank statement.</li> <li>Unreconcile all transactions for the bank book.</li> <li>Unreconcile the matched transactions in the bank statement and bank book.</li> </ol>

# 4.1 BANK RECONCILIATION

During the course of a business operation, at any given point of time, there could be a difference in the bank account balance and the actual bank balance. The bank account balance is as per the bankbook maintained by the company and the actual bank balance is as per the statement received from the bank. The difference in these balances could be due to time lag that accompanies most bank payments and receipt transactions like charging the "Expenses" account with the collection charges or the "Revenue" account with interest received. It could also be due to the errors of omission / commission or compensatory errors.

## 4.1.1 AUTOMATIC RECONCILIATION WHEN BANK STATEMENT IS MANUALLY CREATED

## 4.1.2 CREATE BANK STATEMENT

This sequence explains the process of creating a bank statement manually for automatic reconciliation.

Create Bank Statement											7¢ 1		+	? [	
Statement Information															
Bank Account #	0001-501529-003	Ŧ		В	ank Name T	HE INTERNATIONAL BANK OF QA				Statement #					
Statement Start Date	01-09-2015	Ē		Opening	Balance	1000000.00	Cr 🔻	*							
Statement End Date		Ē		Closing	Balance		Cr 🔻	~							
Transaction Details															_
++ • [No records to display] > >>	+ 0 0 0	Τ Τ,					lin E	J X 🛛 🗎 🛪 🖨 🕸	9 III.	All		Ŧ			Q
# Transaction Type	Date		Remarks		Prefix	Check No.	A	mount	Running	Balance	Dep	ositing Poi	nt		
1 🖾 Payment	~														
4															•
					Ĭ	, i					 				
				Compute Runn	ing Total	Create Bank Statement									

#### Figure 4.1 Create Bank Statement

- 1. The "Create Bank Statement" page is launched. See Figure 4.1.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No and enter the Statement Start Date, Opening Balance, Statement End Date and Closing Balance.
- 3. Select the transactions and click the Create Bank Statement pushbutton to create bank statement.

## **Reconcile Transactions**

This sequence describes the process of automatically reconciling a bank statement that has been created manually.



_																_
*		Reconcile Transactions	5									≣ x;		•	?	6
-	State	ment Information														
		Bank Account No. 00	01-501529-003 💌						Bank Na	me THE INTERNATION	AL BANK OF	QA				
		Statement No.			Statement Start Da	te 2014-03-08	<b></b>		Statement End D	ate		Ē		Au	to Reco	ncile
		Raise Bank Charges 📝			Bank Book Start Da	te 2016-21-04	<b></b>		Bank Book End D	ate		<b></b>			Get D	etails
	Bank	Statement														
44	4	[No records to display] 🕞 📦	+-0+001	Υ.				人面(		2 C 📮 🖷 🔟	All		Ŧ			Q
#		Transaction Type	Date	Depositing Point	Pay-	in-Slip No.	Prefix	Check No.		Amount	т	ag Group	Remarks			
1																
		•														+
	Bank	Book														
44	4	[No records to display] 🕨 🕨	+ - 0 + 0 0 1	τ.				と目に		8 C 🖡 🖷 🔳	Al		•			Q
#		heck No.	Amount	Tag Group	Remarks				Con	pany Reference		Reconciliation. Ref.	#			
1																
		4														E F
		Net Bank Statement 0.00				Net Bank Book	0.00					Charges 0.00				
		Remarks														
							Reconcile Transacti	ions								

#### Figure 4.2 Reconcile Transactions

- 1. The "Reconcile Transactions" page is launched. See Figure 4.2.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No. and enter the Statement No, Start Date and End Date.
- 3. Click the **Get Details** pushbutton to retrieve the bank statement and bankbook details in the multiline.
- 4. Click the Auto Reconcile pushbutton to reconcile the bank statement and bank book details automatically.
- 5. Select the bankbook and bank statement details in the multiline and click the **Reconcile Transactions** pushbutton to reconcile the transactions manually.

## 4.1.3 MANUAL RECONCILIATION WITHOUT BANK CHARGES WHEN THE BANK STATEMENT IS CREATED MANUALLY

## 4.1.4 CREATE BANK STATEMENT

This sequence details the process of creating a bank statement manually for manual reconciliation without bank charges.

- 1. The "Create Bank Statement" page is launched. See Figure 4.1.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No and enter the Statement Start Date, Opening Balance, Statement End Date and Closing Balance.
- 3. Select the transactions and click the Create Bank Statement pushbutton to create bank statement.

## **Reconcile Transactions**

This sequence elaborates the process of manually reconciling a bank statement without taking bank charges into account.

- 1. The "Reconcile Transactions" page is launched. See Figure 4.2.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No. and enter the Statement No, Start Date and End Date.
- 3. Click the Get Details pushbutton to retrieve the bank statement and bank book details in the multiline.
- 4. For reconciliation within the bank statement, select the opposite transaction types within the bank statement and click the **Reconcile Transactions** pushbutton to reconcile the transactions.
- 5. For reconciliation within the bank book, select the opposite transaction types within the bank book and click the **Reconcile Transactions** pushbutton to reconcile the transactions.
- 6. For reconciliation between bank statement and bank book, select similar transaction types in the bank statement and bank book and click the **Reconcile Transactions** pushbutton to reconcile the transactions.

7. For reconciliation between bank statement and bank book based on tag group, enter the same tag group for the similar transaction types in the bank statement and bank book, and click the **Reconcile Transactions** pushbutton to reconcile the transactions.

## 4.1.5 UNRECONCILE AND GENERATE NEW BANK STATEMENTS

Statements that have been reconciled with defective entries or omissions can be reverted.

## **Create Bank Statement**

This sequence describes the process of creating a bank statement manually for reversing reconciliation.

- 1. The "Create Bank Statement" page is launched. See Figure 4.1.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No and enter the Statement Start Date, Opening Balance, Statement End Date and Closing Balance.
- 3. Select the transactions and click the **Create Bank Statement** pushbutton to create bank statement.

## Unreconcile Transactions

This sequence details the process of reversing reconciliation.

★  B Select Transactions			II X 를 다	← ? ⊡ ⊠
- Search Criteria				
Bank Account No. 0001-501529-003 💌			Statement No.	
Statement Start Date	Statement End Date 2016-21-04	m	Display Bank Book	
Reference No From	То			Search
Search Results				
44 4 [No records to display] → → ▼ ▼.			All	Q
# Bank Code Statement No.	Reference No.	Date	Transaction Amount	Reconciled On
	Found no rows to displayf!			
Transaction Details				

#### **Figure 4.3 Unreconcile Transactions**

- 1. The "Select Transactions" page is launched. See Figure 4.3.
- 2. Select the Bank Account No.
- 3. Enter the Statement No, Start Date, End Date, Reference No From and To to search for the transaction types.
- 4. Select the **Display** as either "Bank Book" or "Bank Statement" from the header.
- 5. Select the transactions and click the **Unreconcile Transactions** pushbutton to unreconcile the transactions.
- 6. Select the "Transaction Details" link to view the details of the transactions have been unreconciled.

# REVALUATION

In addition to the base currency companies also transact in foreign currencies. These transactions also make financial postings in the books of accounts to update the account balances in the account currency, base currency and the parallel base currency (if applicable) of the company. Accounting principles demand that foreign currency balances be reinstated at the end of each financial year using exchange rates prevalent at that time. Exchange rate fluctuations that happen during the course of the operations must also be reflected in the financial statement of the company. Revaluation is the process that facilitates the reinstatement of foreign currency balances to represent the true financial picture of the company, as on the reporting date.



## Theme Revaluation: Scenario 1 – Revaluation of Customer / Supplier / Account Balances

S	Flow of Events	Primary	Component	Activity	UI Name	Functional Steps
No		Actor(s)	Name	Name		
1.	Revalue Customer Account Balances	Finance Manager	Currency Revaluation	Run Customer Balance Revaluation	Run Customer Balance Revaluation	<ol> <li>Select the numbering type for the revaluation voucher &amp; reversal voucher</li> <li>Select the finance book for which revaluation has to be run</li> <li>Select the revaluation period and the control account type as "Customer Control Account", "Customer Prepayment Account" or "Customer Deposit Account".</li> <li>Select a foreign account currency to be revalued</li> <li>Retrieve the account codes in the multiline</li> <li>Modify the defaulted exchange rates, if required.</li> <li>Compute balances.</li> <li>Enter cost center, analysis and sub analysis codes, if required.</li> <li>Nun revaluation</li> <li>View accounting information</li> <li>Attach notes to the revaluation entry, if required.</li> </ol>



2.	Revalue Supplier	Finance	Currency	Run Supplier	Run Supplier	1. Select the numbering type
	Account Balances	Manager	Revaluation	Balance	<u>Balance</u>	for the revaluation voucher &
				Revaluation	<u>Revaluatio</u> n	reversal voucher
						2. Select the finance book for
						which revaluation has to
						be run
						3. Select the revaluation
						period and the control
						account type as "Supplier
						Control Account", "Supplier
						Prepayment Account" or
						"Supplier Deposit Account".
						4. Select a foreign account
						currency to be revalued
						5. Retrieve the account codes
						in the multiline
						6. Modify the defaulted
						exchange rates, if required.
						7. Compute balances.
						8. Enter cost center, analysis
						and sub analysis codes,
						if required.
						9. Run revaluation
						10. View accounting
						information
						11. Attach notes to the
						revaluation entry,
						if required.

# ramco

3.	Revalue Asset and	Finance	Currency	Run Account	Run Account	1. Select the numbering type
	Liability Account Balances	Manager	Revaluation	Balance Revaluation	<u>Balance</u> Revaluation	for the revaluation voucher & reversal voucher
						2. Select the finance book for
						which revaluation has to
						be run
						3. Select the revaluation period
						and the account group as
						"Asset Account" or "Liability Account".
						4. Select a foreign account
						currency to be revalued
						5. Retrieve the account codes in the multiline
						6. Modify the defaulted
						exchange rates, if required.
						7. Compute balances.
						8. Enter cost center, analysis
						and sub analysis codes,
						if required. 9. Run revaluation
						10. View accounting
						information
						11. Attach notes to the
						revaluation entry,
						if required.
4.	Account Balance	Finance	Currency	Run Account	<u>Run Account</u>	1. Select the numbering type
	Revaluation based	Manager	Revaluation	Balance	<u>Balance</u>	for the revaluation voucher &
	on Simulation Run No.			Revaluation	<u>Revaluatio</u> n	reversal voucher
	NO.					2. Select finance book for which revaluation has to be run
						3. Enter valid simulation run no.
						4. Retrieve the simulation
						details in the multiline.
						5. Run revaluation for the
						simulation.
						6. View accounting information
						7. Attach notes to the
						revaluation entry, if required.



			_			
5.	Simulate Revaluation of Asset Account Balances	Finance Manager	Currency Revaluation	Simulate Account Balance Revaluation	Simulate Account Balance Revaluation	<ol> <li>Select the numbering type for the simulation run.</li> <li>Select finance book for which revaluation has to be run</li> <li>Select the revaluation period and the account group as "Asset Account" or "Liability Account".</li> <li>Select a foreign account currency to be revalued.</li> <li>Retrieve the account details in the multiline</li> <li>Modify exchange rates within tolerance limits, if required.</li> <li>Compute balances</li> <li>Enter cost center, analysis and sub analysis codes, if required.</li> <li>Simulate revaluation for asset or liability account</li> <li>Attach notes to the simulation run number.</li> </ol>
6.	Maintain Reason Information	Finance Manager	Reason Code Definition	Maintain Reason Information	<u>Maintain</u> <u>Reason</u> <u>Informatio</u> n	1. Select the business component, transaction type and the event for maintaining the reason information.
7.	Reverse Customer Balance Revaluation	Finance Manager	Currency Revaluation	Reverse Customer Balance Revaluation	<u>Reverse</u> <u>Customer</u> <u>Revaluatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Search for the voucher to be reversed or enter the voucher number directly</li> <li>Set the numbering type for the reversal voucher.</li> <li>Reverse revaluation</li> <li>View account information.</li> <li>Attach notes to the reversal voucher, if required.</li> </ol>
8.	Reverse Supplier Balance Revaluation	Finance Manager	Currency Revaluation	Reverse Supplier Balance Revaluation	<u>Reverse</u> <u>Supplier</u> <u>Balance</u> <u>Revaluatio</u> n	<ol> <li>Search for the voucher to be reversed or enter the voucher number directly</li> <li>Set the numbering type for the reversal voucher.</li> <li>Reverse revaluation</li> <li>View account information.</li> <li>Attach notes to the reversal voucher, if required.</li> </ol>

#### 105 | Book Keeping

# ramco

9.	Reverse Asset Account Balance Revaluation	Finance Manager	Currency Revaluation	Reverse Account Balance Revaluation	<u>Reverse</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Balance</u> Revaluation	<ol> <li>Search for the voucher to be reversed or enter the voucher number directly</li> <li>Set the numbering type for</li> </ol>
						<ol> <li>the reversal voucher.</li> <li>Reverse revaluation</li> <li>View account information.</li> <li>Attach notes to the reversal voucher, if required.</li> </ol>

ramco

# 5.1 REVALUATION OF CUSTOMER / SUPPLIER / ACCOUNT BALANCES

Foreign currency balance revaluation is done for the posting FBs in a revaluation period, and is handled under three categories: supplier balances, customer balances and account balances.

## 5.1.1 REVALUE CUSTOMER ACCOUNT BALANCES

This sequence elaborates the process of revaluing the balances of the customer control account, customer prepayment account and customer deposits account.

\star 🏢 Run Customer Balance Revaluation	on						🗐 Z	: = :	s 🔶	? []
Voucher No. Voucher Date Remarks			Finance Book AVE.			Status Numbering Type				
Reversal Voucher Details     Reversal Voucher no.     Search Criteria			Reversal Date			Reversal Numbering Type	RCRV 🔻			
Revaluation Period 01 JAN 201 Account Code from P	1 - 31 JAN 2011 💌		Currency ALL To P			Control Account Type	All		Ŧ	Get
Revaluation Information										
📢 🖣 [No records to display] >>>> + - 🗧	FOOT.			人世	◙ % ፼ ⊠ ♥ ●	# # 11 Al		Ŧ		Q
# Account Code	Currency Exchange	Rate Balance in A	ccount Currency		Balance in Base Currency		Revalued Balance	in Base Curr	ency	
4										Þ
Compute Balances										
Totals										
Balance in Base Currency		Revalued Balance in B				ge Gain/Loss in Base Currency				
Balance in Parallel Base Currency		Revalued Balance in Parallel B	ase Currency		Exchange Gain/	Loss in Parallel Base Currency				
			Run Revaluation							
Accounting Information		Attach Notes								
Created by			Created Date							

#### Figure 5.1 Run Customer Balance Revaluation

- 1. The "Run Customer Balance Revaluation" page is launched. See Figure 5.1.
- 2. Select the Numbering Type for the revaluation voucher and reversal voucher.
- 3. Select Finance Book and Revaluation Period for which revaluation has to be done.
- Select the Control Account Type as "All", "Customer Deposit A/C", "Customer Prepayment A/C" and "Customer Receivable A/C".
- 5. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the revaluation details in the multiline.
- 6. Select a foreign account currency to be revalued.
- 7. Modify the Exchange Rate value in the multiline, if required.
- 8. Click the Compute Balances pushbutton to compute the balances in base and parallel base currency.
- 9. Click the Run Revaluation pushbutton for revaluation of customer control, prepayment and deposit accounts.

## 5.1.2 REVALUE SUPPLIER ACCOUNT BALANCES

This sequence explains the process of revaluing the balances of the supplier control account, supplier prepayment account and supplier deposits account.

Run Supplier Balance Revaluation						= :	¢ ≣ ⊑	+	? 🗔
Voucher No Voucher Date Remarks			Finance Book AVEOS V		Statu: Numbering Type				
Reversal Voucher Details     Reversal Voucher no.		1	Reversal Date		Reversal Numbering Type	RCRV V			
Search Criteria  Revaluation Period 01 JAN 20 Account Code from P	11 - 31 JAN 2011 💌		Currency ALL  To D		Control Account Type	Al		Ŧ	Get
- Revaluation Information									
📢 🐳 [No records to display] 🕨 💓 🛨 🗕	0 % 0 0 T T.				🗎 🍽 😃 🗰 💷 🖬 🗛		Ŧ		Q
# 🗇 Account Code	Currency Exchange	Rate Balance in A	lccount Currency	Balance in	Base Currency	Revalued Balance	in Base Curre	ncy	
1									
4									Þ
Compute Balances									
Totals									
Balance in Base Currency		Revalued Balance in Ba	ase Currency		Exchange Gain/Loss in Base Currency				
Balance in Parallel Base Currency		Revalued Balance in Parallel Ba	ase Currency		Exchange Gain/Loss in Parallel Base Currency				
			Run Revaluation						
Accounting Information		Attach Notes							
Created by			Created Date						

#### Figure 5.2 Run Supplier Balance Revaluation

- 1. The "Run Supplier Balance Revaluation" page is launched. See Figure 5.2.
- 2. Select the Numbering Type for the revaluation voucher and reversal voucher.
- 3. Select Finance Book and Revaluation Period for which revaluation has to be done.
- 4. Select the **Control Account Type** as "All", "Supplier Deposit A/C", "Supplier Prepayment A/C" and "Supplier Payable A/C". If "All" is selected, the system retrieves and displays all the Account Codes of "Supplier Deposit A/C", "Supplier Prepayment A/C" and "Supplier Payable A/C".
- 5. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the revaluation details in the multiline.
- 6. Select a foreign account currency to be revalued.
- 7. Modify the **Exchange Rate** value in the multiline, if required.
- 8. Click the **Compute Balances** pushbutton to compute the balances in base and parallel base currency.
- 9. Click the **Run Revaluation** pushbutton for revaluation of customer control, prepayment and deposit accounts.

## 5.1.3 REVALUATION ACCOUNT BALANCES

This sequence details the process of revaluing the balances of asset and liability accounts



Run Account Balance Revaluation										24	ē (	⇒ ←	3
Voucher No.								Status					
Voucher Date				Finance Book AVEOS 💌			N	umbering Type	CRV 🔻				
Remarks													
Reversal Voucher Details													
Reversal Voucher no.				Reversal Date			Reversal N	umbering Type	RCRV 🔻				
Search Criteria													
Simulation Run No. 👂				Revaluation Period 01 JAN 2011 - 31 JAN	2011	•		Currency	ALL 🔻				
Account Code from <b>P</b>				To <b>P</b>			,	Account Group	ALL	Ŧ			
													Get
					人工		8 9 B	All					
C Account Code	Currency	T. Exchange Rate		Balance in Account Currency	<u>ک</u> ۱	Image: Second	8 9 8	All	Revalued Bal			rency	
				Balance in Account Currency	۶.		8 u II	All	Revalued Bala			rency	
Account Code				Balance in Account Currency	<u>له</u> ال		* • B	Al	Revalued Bal			rency	
Account Code				Balance in Account Currency	<u>ب</u>		8 9 8	AI	Revalued Bal			rency	
Account Code				Balance in Account Currency			8 u 8	All	Revalued Ball			rency	
Account Code     Account Code     Account Code				Balance in Account Currency	۶. h		3 9 8	All	Revalued Bal			rèncy	
Account Code     Account Code     Totals					۶. In	Balance in Base Currency			Revalued Ball			rency	
Account Code     a     a     ompute Balances     Totals     Ealance in Base Currency		Exchange Rate	Revalued	Balance in Base Currency	ية الم	Balance in Base Currency	nge Gain/Loss in	Base Currency				rency	
Account Code  Code  Totals		Exchange Rate	Revalued			Balance in Base Currency		Base Currency				rency	
Account Code     a     a     ompute Balances     Totals     Ealance in Base Currency		Exchange Rate	Revalued	Balance in Base Currency	<u>}</u> <u>n</u>	Balance in Base Currency	nge Gain/Loss in	Base Currency				rency	
e ompute Balances Totals Balance in Base Currency		Exchange Rate	Revalued	Balance in Base Currency in Parallel Base Currency	<u>}</u> 11	Balance in Base Currency	nge Gain/Loss in	Base Currency				rency	گ

#### Figure 5.3 Run Account Balance Revaluation

- 1. The "Run Account Balance Revaluation" page is launched. See Figure 5.3.
- 2. Select the Numbering Type for the revaluation voucher and reversal voucher.
- 3. Select Finance Book and Revaluation Period for which revaluation has to be done.
- 4. Select the Account Group as "All", "Asset Account" or "Liability Account".
- 5. Enter the **Simulation Run No**, if applicable.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the revaluation details in the multiline.
- 7. Select a foreign account currency to be revalued.
- 8. Modify the **Exchange Rate** value in the multiline, if required.
- 9. Click the **Compute Balances** pushbutton to compute the balances in base and parallel base currency.
- 10. Click the Run Revaluation pushbutton for revaluation of customer control, prepayment and deposit accounts.

## 5.1.4 SIMULATE ASSET ACCOUNT BALANCE REVALUATION

This sequence describes the process of simulating revaluation of asset accounts.

\star 🏢 Simulate Account Balance Revalua	ition			
Voucher No. Date 2016-21-04 Revaluation Period 01.14H 2011 - Account Code from <i>P</i> Currency EUR *	imi - 31 JAN 2011 ▼	Remarks AVEOS1 V		Type RCRV V roup ASSET V Get
Revaluation Information				
📢 📢 [No records to display] 🕨 🍽 🗇	0 T T			Q <b>v</b>
# Account Code	Currency Exchange Rate	Balance in Account Currency	Balance in Base Currency	Revalued Balance in Base Currency
1 🗉				
4				•
Totals				
Balance in Base Currency		Revalued Balance in Base Currency	Exchange Gain/Loss in Base Curr	ency
Balance in Parallel Base Currency		Revalued Balance in Parallel Base Currency	Exchange Gain/Loss in Parallel Base Curr	ency
		Simulate Revalution		
Attach Notes				

#### Figure 5.4 Simulate Account Balance Revaluation
- 1. The "Simulate Account Balances" page is launched. See Figure 5.4.
- 2. Select the **Numbering Type** for the simulation.
- 3. Select **Finance Book** and **Revaluation Period** for which revaluation has to be run.
- 4. Select the **Account Group** as: "Asset Account" or "Liability Account".
- 5. Select a foreign account currency to be revalued.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the account details.
- 7. Modify the **Exchange Rate**, if required within the tolerance limits.
- 8. Click the **Compute Balances** pushbutton to compute balances.
- 9. Click the Simulate Revaluation pushbutton to simulate the account balance revaluation.

# 5.1.5 MAINTAIN REASON INFORMATION

This sequence explains the process of maintaining various reasons for reversing the revaluation.

1. Select the Maintain Reason Information under Reason Code definition business component. The Maintain Reason Information page appears. *See Figure 5.5.* 

	Maintain Reason Information	ı					= x = ₽ +	? 🗔 🖪
	Component	•	Transaction Type		v	Event		¥
44	[No records to display]	+ 0 0 0 T T				🗏 🖮 III 🛛 Al	•	Q
#	Reason #	Reason Description	Status	Default				
1			ACTIVE 🗸	NO				~
			Sa	ave Reason				

# Figure 5.5 Maintain Reason Information

- 2. Select the **Component** for which you want to define a reason for an event.
- 3. Select the **Transaction Type such as** "Account Based Debit Note", "Account Based Credit Note", "Reverse Account Based Debit Note" or "Reverse Account Based Credit Note" for which you want to define a reason.
- 4. Select the **Event** as "Hold / Release" or "Reverse".
- 5. In the multiline, enter the Reason Code and the Reason Description.
- 6. Set the **Status** as "Active", to activate the reason code for future transactions. Select "Inactive", for inactivating the reason code.
- 7. Set the **Default** drop-down list box as "Yes", to indicate that the reason is to be displayed by default in the respective business component. Select "No" otherwise.
- 8. Click the **Save Reasons** pushbutton to save the reasons defined.

# 5.1.6 REVERSE CUSTOMER BALANCE REVALUATION

This sequence explains the process of reversing the revaluation of customer account balances.

- 1. Search and retrieve the voucher to be reversed from the "Select Voucher" page.
- 2. The "Reverse Customer Balance Revaluation" page is launched.
- 3. Enter the **Voucher No** or select **Numbering Type**.
- 4. Enter Reversal Voucher No or select Reversal Numbering Type.
- 5. Click the **Reverse Revaluation** pushbutton to reverse the revaluation.

# 5.1.7 REVERSE SUPPLIER BALANCE REVALUATION

This sequence elaborates the process of reversing the revaluation of supplier account balances.



- 1. Search and retrieve the voucher to be reversed from the "Select Voucher" page.
- 2. The "Reverse Supplier Balance Revaluation" page is launched.
- 3. Enter the Voucher No or select Numbering Type.
- 4. Enter Reversal Voucher No or select Reversal Numbering Type.
- 5. Click the **Reverse Revaluation** pushbutton to reverse the revaluation.

# 5.1.8 REVERSE ACCOUNT BALANCE REVALUATION

This sequence details the process of reversing the revaluation of asset and liability account balances.

- 1. Search and retrieve the voucher to be reversed from the "Select Voucher" page.
- 2. The "Reverse Account Balance Revaluation" page is launched.
- 3. Enter the Voucher No or select Numbering Type.
- 4. Enter Reversal Voucher No or select Reversal Numbering Type.
- 5. Click the **Reverse Revaluation** pushbutton to reverse the revaluation.

# STATUTORY AND OPERATIONAL MIS

Every organization would need to analyze the expenses and revenue, which directly affects the profitability of the company. An analysis could be made on the nature of Income, Expenditure, Income or Expenditure etc. The analysis and sub-analysis codes provide another dimension for analysis without proliferating account codes. To help this analysis, the analysis and sub- analysis codes are provided along with the account code while recording any transaction.

Financial accounting and accounting for tax purpose may differ. Hence, a tax book allows posting tax related transactions, for example, treatment of depreciation on fixed assets. Every FB will have its respective "Tax Book", based on parameters defined regarding the applicability of the tax book. This tax related information can be also be used to extract reports like trial balance, balance sheet and so on. It could also be used for further analysis.

A financial statement layout represents the format in which the financial statements are published for a company. A financial statement is used by a varied target audience, which could range from shareholders, investors, financial institutions or credit rating agencies. This varied target audience requires a flexible reporting structure. The company formats of the financial statements are provided as per the generally accepted accounting practices or it could be created based on the business requirements of the company.

# Theme Statutory and Operational MIS: Scenario 1 – Two-dimension Expense Analysis using Analysis and Sub Analysis Code

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1	Create Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Create Analysis Code	<u>Create</u> <u>Analysis</u> <u>Code</u>	<ol> <li>Enter description and effective date for the analysis code.</li> <li>Create analysis code.</li> </ol>
2	Edit Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Edit Analysis Code	Edit Analysis code	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using analysis code, description and effective dates.</li> <li>Modify and save the analysis code details.</li> </ol>
3	Inactivate Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code	<u>Activat</u> ∉ <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Analysis Code</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using analysis code, description and effective dates.</li> <li>Inactivate the analysis code.</li> </ol>
4	Activate Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code	<u>Activat∉</u> <u>Inactivat</u> e <u>Analysis Code</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using analysis code, description and effective dates.</li> <li>Activate the analysis code.</li> </ol>
5	Create Sub Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Create Analysis Code	<u>Create Sub</u> <u>Analysis Code</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the sub analysis code and description.</li> <li>Create the sub analysis</li> </ol>
6	Edit Sub Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Edit Analysis Code	<u>Edit Analysis</u> <u>Code</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using analysis code, description and effective dates.</li> <li>Modify and save the analysis code details.</li> </ol>
7	Inactivate Sub Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code	Activat∉ Inactivat®ub Analysis Code	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using sub analysis code, description and status.</li> <li>Inactivate the sub analysis code.</li> </ol>

\_

# ramco

8	Activate Sub Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code	<u>Activat<del>û</del>ub</u> <u>Analysis</u> <u>Code</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve the details using sub analysis code, description and status.</li> </ol>
9	Map Sub Analysis Code to Analysis Code and default the Sub Analysis Code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Manage Sub Analysis Code Mapping	Manage Sub Analysis Code Mapping	<ol> <li>Map sub analysis code to the analysis code</li> <li>Default the Sub Analysis Code</li> </ol>
10	Assign Analysis code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Assign Analysis code	<u>Assign</u> <u>Analysis</u> <u>code</u>	1. Map analysis code to account code
11	Un Assign Analysis code	Finance Manager	Account Based Budget	Activate / Inactivate Analysis code	<u>Un Assign</u> Analysis code	1. Unmap analysis code from the account code
12	View Account Balance	Finance Manager	Finance Book Processing	View Account Balance	<u>View</u> <u>Account</u> <u>Balance</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve account balances based on the filter criteria like Book Type, Finance Book, Currency, Account Code From, Account Code To and Layout Heading.</li> </ol>

# 6.1 TWO-DIMENSION EXPENSE ANALYSIS USING ANALYSIS AND SUB ANALYSIS CODE

Two-dimension expense analysis using analysis and sub analysis code enables viewing the expenses and revenue in terms of analysis and sub analysis codes.

# 6.1.1 CREATE ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence elaborates the process of creating analysis codes.

	Search	T	Financial Period	То		2015 - 31 DEC 2016 💌	Financial year 31 DEC 20 Criteria	Search	
	Search			То			Criteria	Search	-
	Search			То					100
	Search						Analysis Code From		
				То			Sub Analysis Code From		
							is Details	Analys	-
<b>▼</b>		C 🖡 👾 💷 🗛	<b></b>			Q T T	1-5/6 > > + - 0 + 0	4	¢
		Description	Sub Analysis Code	Description	Analysis Code	Budget Amount	Finance Year / Period		÷
		Flight	A100	TCD	1100		31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		
		100A	100A	Flight contract	1110		31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		
		Flight	A100	Flight contract	1110		31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		
		100A	100A	BCA	BCA		31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		
		Flight	A100	BCA	BCA		31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		
		Flight 100A Flight 100A	A100 100A A100 100A	TCD Flight contract Flight contract BCA	1100 1110 1110 BCA	Budget Amount	31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016 31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016 31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016 31 DEC 2015 - 31 DEC 2016		# 2 3 4

# Figure 6.1 Create Analysis Code

- 1. The "Create Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.1.
- 2. Enter the **Analysis Code**, **Description**, Reporting Cost Center?, **Effective Date From** and **Effective Date To** in the multiline.
- 3. Click the Create Analysis Code pushbutton to create the analysis code.
- 4. Select the "Assign Analysis Code" link to assign analysis code to the account code.
- 5. Select the "Create SubAnalysis Code" link to create the sub analysis details.

# 6.1.2 EDIT ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence explains the process of modifying analysis codes.

-Search C										
	Analysis Code F Effective Date F			Fo		Description	0 1			
Analysis		rom	a Effective Date I	0			Search			
	1 - 4/4	0 0 T T.		<b>L</b>		All		Ŧ	1	Q
	Analysis Code	Description	Reporting Cost Center?	Effective Date From	Effective Date To					
	1100	TCD	~	2016-01-01						-
	1110	Flight contract	~	2014-01-01						
	BCA	BCA	~	2011-01-01						
	CT5	General Operations	Yes 🗸	2012-01-01	2020-31-12					
			~							-

# Figure 6.2 Edit Analysis Code

- 1. The Edit Analysis Code page is launched. See Figure 6.2.
- 2. Retrieve the analysis code details using the search criteria: Analysis Code, Description, Reporting Cost Center, Effective Date From and Effective Date To.
- 3. Modify the Description, Effective Date From and Effective Date To
- 4. Click the Edit Analysis Code pushbutton to save the modifications made.

5. Select the "Edit SubAnalysis Code" link to modify the subanalysis details.

# 6.1.3 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence details the process of activating "Inactive" analysis codes and inactivating "Active" analysis codes.

*		Activate/ Inactivate A	Analysis Code								7\$		3 <b>+</b>	5	6	ĸ
	Search	Criteria														-
		Analysis Code Fr	rom		То				Description							
		Effective Date Fr	rom	Effective	Date To	(iii)			Status	Active						
										Searc	h					
		Effective D	Date													
		sis Details													_	
44		1 -4/4 > >> - T	Τ.					# + II	Al			Ŧ		_	_	ρ
#		Analysis Code	Description	Effective Date From	Effective Date To	Status										
1		1100	TCD	2016-01-01		Active										
2		1110	Flight contract	2014-01-01		Active										
3		BCA	BCA	2011-01-01		Active										
4		CT5	General Operations	2012-01-01	2020-31-12	Active										
- 1															_	-
			Activate Analysis Code				Inactivate	Analysis Code	2							
Activ	te / In	activate SubAnalysis Code														

# Figure 6.3 Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.3.
- 2. Retrieve the analysis codes using the search criteria: Analysis Code From, Analysis Code To, Description, Effective Date From, Effective Date To and Status.
- 3. Select the analysis code in the multiline and click the **Activate Analysis Code** pushbutton to activate the Inactive analysis code.
- 4. Select the Active analysis code in the multiline and click the Inactivate Analysis Code to inactivate the analysis code.

# 6.1.4 CREATE SUB ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence elaborates the process of creating sub analysis codes.

	Acti	vate/Inactivate Subanalysis	Code								<b>7</b> \$		⇒ +	;	K
-	Search	1 Criteria													_
		Sub Analysis Code From			То				Description						
		Status Act	ive 🔻							Sean	:h				
		Effective Date	(11)												
	Analys	is Details													
44	4	1 -2/2 → → T T.				人主义		# # III	All			Ŧ			Q
		Sub Analysis Code	Description	Status											
1		100A	100A	Active											
2		A100	Flight	Active											
							~								 
			Activate SubAnalysis Code				InActivate	SubAnalysis Co	de						
-															 

### Figure 6.4 Create Sub Analysis Code

- 5. The "Create Sub Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.4.
- 6. Enter the Sub Analysis Code and Description in the multiline.
- 7. Click the Create Sub Analysis Code pushbutton to save the sub analysis codes details.

# 6.1.5 EDIT SUB ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence describes the process of modifying sub analysis codes.



	_				_	-	_	-	_
	Edit	t Subanalysis Code		1	≣ _:;	e	⇒ ←	?	-0 K
	Searc	h Criteria							
		Sub Analysis Code From	То Ве	cription					
				S	earch				
	Analy	sis Details							
4		1 - 2 / 2 🕨 🗰 🕂 🗇 🖉				Ŧ			Q
=		Sub Analysis Code	Description						
1			1004						
2			Flight						
3									
			Edit SubAnalysis Code						

# Figure 6.5 Edit Sub Analysis Code

- 1. The "Edit Sub Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.5.
- 2. Retrieve the sub analysis codes using the search criteria: Sub Analysis Code From, To, Description and Description.
- 3. Modify the description in the multiline and click the Edit Sub Analysis Code pushbutton to save the modifications.

# 6.1.6 ACTIVATE / INACTIVATE ANALYSIS AND SUB ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence explains the process of activating or inactivating sub analysis codes.

Activate / Inactivate Analysis and Subanalysis Code				■≭률다←	2 5 5
				■ -+ ® +) <del>/</del>	" LO K
Search Criteria					
Analysis Code From		То	Account Code 👂		
Sub Analysis Code From		То	Status	Active 💌	
				Search	
Effective Date					
- Analysis Details					
🐳 🖌 [No records to display] >>>> — 🝸 🔭			入 LL 型 X 区 首 単 毎 川 All	Ŧ	Q
# Analysis Code Description	Sub Analysis Code	Description	Status		
		Found no rows to display!!!			
Activate Code			Inactivate Code		
Activate Code			Inactivate Code		
UnAssign Analysis Code	Activate / Inactivate Analysis Code		Activate / Inactivate SubAnalysis Code		

# Figure 6.6 Activate / Inactivate Sub Analysis Code

- 1. The "Activate / Inactivate Sub Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.6.
- 2. Retrieve the analysis codes using the search criteria: Sub Analysis Code From, To, Description and Status.
- 3. Select the sub analysis code in the multiline and click the **Activate SubAnalysis Code** pushbutton to activate the Inactive sub analysis code.
- 4. Select the Active sub analysis code in the multiline and click the **Inactivate SubAnalysis Code** to inactivate the sub analysis code.

# 6.1.7 MANAGE SUB ANALYSIS CODE MAPPING

This sequence explains the process of assigning sub analysis codes to an analysis code and to default the sub Analysis Code.



Manage Sub Analysis Code Mapping			23		⇒ ←	?	to K
Analysis Code Ø G111  Sub Analysis Details							
44 4 1 -1/1 > >> + C C C T	T T.		al al	Ŧ			Q
# 🗉 Sub Analysis Code 🔎	Description		Default Sub Analysis Co	le			
1 🖾 G111			Yes				~
2			No				~
		Save					

# Figure 6.7 Manage Sub Analysis Code Mapping

- 1. The "Manage Sub Analysis Code Mapping" page is launched. See Figure 6.7.
- 2. Enter the Analysis Code manually or using the help facility.
- 3. Retrieve the **Sub Analysis Code** in the multiline using the help facility.
- 4. Use the **Default Sub Analysis Code** drop down list box and select **Yes** for defaulting the sub-analysis code to the Analysis code.
- 5. Click the **Save** pushbutton to assign the sub analysis code to the analysis code and default the Sub Analysis Code.
  - 🖎 Note: Ensure that at least one of the Sub Analysis codes should be set as default for the Analysis Code.

# 6.1.8 ASSIGN ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence details the process of assigning analysis codes to an account code.

Assign Analysis Code					i z	● □ ←	? 🗔	K
Assign basis Analysis Account Code 👂 111100	to Account	Analysis C	ode Ø 11	Sub	Analysis Code 👂 ADA			_
Reference Details     Account Code From     Analysis Code From			To					
Sub Analysis Code From           Details           44         [No records to display]			То		Search	<b>v</b>		Q
# Account Code	Description	Analysis Code	Description	Sub Analysis Code	Description			
4								•
			Assign					
View Analysis Code	UnAssign	Analysis Code						_

# Figure 6.8 Assign Analysis Code

- 1. The "Assign Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.8.
- 2. Enter the **Account Code** manually or using the help facility.
- 3. Retrieve the Analysis Code and Sub Analysis Code using the search criteria: Analysis Code From, To, Sub Analysis Code From and To.
- 4. Click the **Search** button to retrieve the details in the multiline.
- 5. The system displays Account Code, Description, Analysis Code, Description, Sub Analysis Code, Description,
- 6. Use the **Default Analysis Code** drop down list box and select **Yes** for defaulting the analysis code to the account code.
- 7. Click the **Assign** pushbutton to assign the analysis and sub analysis codes to the account code.

# 6.1.9 UNASSIGN ANALYSIS CODE

This sequence describes the process of removing analysis codes that has been assigned to an account code.



UnAssign Analysis Code			= x; •	⊧¤ ← ?	lo K
Account Code Ø 450900					
Analysis Code From		То			
Sub Analysis Code From		To	Search		
Analysis Details		10	Jearch		
(4) € [No records to display] > >> + - □ ≠ ○ ○ ▼ ▼.			] All	<b>v</b>	Q
# Analysis Code Description	Sub Analysis Code	Description	Status	Remarks	
1					
4					•
		Unaversity Orde			
		Unassign Code			

# Figure 6.9 Unassign Analysis Code

- 1. The "Unassign Analysis Code" page is launched. See Figure 6.9.
- 2. Enter the **Account Code** manually or using help facility.
- 3. Retrieve the Analysis Code and Sub Analysis Code using the search criteria: Analysis Code From, To, Sub Analysis **Code From** and **To**.
- 4. Select the analysis code and click the **Unassign Analysis Code** pushbutton to unassign the analysis and sub analysis codes from the account code.

# 6.1.10 VIEW ACCOUNT BALANCE

This sequence explains the process of viewing account balances.

		~	ption										-
5	vie	wu	ption Book Type	Posting FB		Finance Book	AVEOS =			Currency	Page	Ŧ	
										Currency	Dase	*	
	Tra	neit	Account Information	2016-21-04		Year To Date							
	mai	insite	Transit Account	NO T		Transit Account Type							
<u> -</u>	Sea	rch	Criteria			Transic Account Type							
			Account Code from			То							
			Layout Heading	All	T	Account Classification	All	•		Account Group	ALL	Ŧ	
			Automatic Posting Account Type			Control Account Type				necount oroup	Search		
	Sea	rch	Results			control Account Type					Search		
	4								<b>4 1 1</b>	II Al	Ŧ		-
•	-		1 - 10 / 245 • • • T T.	0.15	0 1 11	Period Dr Amount		e 🗊 🔀 🖬 🔮			1.5		_
			Account Lode	Description	Opening balance	Period Dr Amount		Period Cr Amount	10314.03	Running Balance 5997.58	Currency		
			1001001	Charge Suspense CHARGE SUSPENSE-edit	2027.82		4316.45		10314.03	2027.82			
2			109902	Freight Expenses	2027-82		16041.85		2619.94	13421.91			
			109902	Petty Cash	-12684.31		10041-05		2015.54	-12684.31			
5			11000	BMO General CAD	-64790.37					-64790.37			
5			111100	BMO BLOCKED CAD	-36122080.40					-36122080.40			
			111200	BMO EFT Payments CAD	-87633.18					-87633.18			
			111300	BMO CHQ Payments CAD	-153522.85					-153522.85			
				BNS General CAD	4000.02					4000.02	CAD		
7 B 9			111500							853105.48			

# Figure 6.10 View Account Balance

- 1. The "View Account Balance" page is launched. See Figure 6.10.
- 2. Enter the Book Type, Finance Book, Currency and Date in the View Option group box.
- 3. Enter the Transit Account and Transit Account Type in the Transit Account Information group box.
- 4. Retrieve the account details based on the search criteria: Account Code From, To, Layout Heading, Account Classification, Account Group, Automatic Account Posting Type, and Control Account Type
- 5. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the details in the multiline.
- Select the Report Option in the Report Option group box and click the Save as Text Stock Balance Details pushbutton to view and save the report details for the selected finance book. Also, select the Export to XL – Transaction wise Balance pushbutton to generate the report details for the selected finance book in Excel format.



S No	Flow of Events	Priority Actor	Component Name	Activity name	UI name	Functional Steps
1.	Create Schedule using Account Code and Account Group	Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Create Schedule	<u>Create</u> <u>Schedule</u>	<ol> <li>Retrieve account codes based on a specific criteria.</li> <li>Select account codes and create an account group</li> <li>Retrieve schedules using search criteria.</li> <li>Create schedule by mapping account codes and schedules.</li> </ol>
	Delete schedule	Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Edit Schedule	Select Schedule	<ol> <li>Retrieve schedule details using search criteria.</li> <li>Modify the schedule details.</li> <li>Retrieve schedule details using search criteria.</li> </ol>
						2. Delete the schedule details.

# Theme Statutory and Operational MIS: Scenario 2 – Account Based MIS Reports Definition



# 6.2 ACCOUNT BASED MIS REPORTS DEFINITION

A schedule is an important part of a layout. In other words, a layout is a group of schedules. A schedule could comprise of account codes, groups or sub-schedules. Groups consist of logical groups of account codes. An account code could be a part of multiple independent schedules. However, it must be considered only once in a schedule.

# 6.2.1 CREATE SCHEDULE USING ACCOUNT CODE AND GROUP

This sequence details the process of creating schedules using account codes and account groups.

* 🗎	Create Sc	hedule					= 자 좀 다	← ? ⊡ ⊼
								<b>_</b>
		Schedule No.		Schedule Description				
	So	chedule Classification	Income Statement 🔹	Book Type	Posting FB 🛛 🔻	Finance Book	AVEOS 🔻	
	c	Chart of Accounts ID	AVEOS 🔻	Description	Aveos COA	Chart of Accounts Type	Operative COA	
- Sear	ch Criteria							
		Option	All Account Codes	<ul> <li>Account Classification</li> </ul>	INCOME STATEMENT	Account Group	ALL 💌	
		Account Code from		То		Account Description		
		Schedule No. From		То				Search
- Sear	ch Results							
	1 - 5 / 225	• • + =	0 4 0 0 7 1		A 1	■ 🛛 🗶 🖻 💴 📽 📮 🖷 🔳 🗛	Ψ	Q
# 8	Line No.	Include		Account Code / Schedule No	Description		Classification	Account Grou
1 8	3	1 No	*	109902	Freight Expenses	1	Income Statement	EXPENSES
2 E	3	2 No	*	200202	Depreciation Account	1	Income Statement	EXPENSES
3 8	3	3 No	*	411100	Material Revenue CAD	1	Income Statement	REVENUE
4 8	3	4 No	*	411200	Material Revenue USD	1	Income Statement	REVENUE
5 8	3	5 No	*	411300	Material Revenue Manual Adjustmer	nt CAD 1	Income Statement	REVENUE
	4							• •
·								
Grou	p Account/Sch	edule						
		Line No. From		То				
		Group Heading		Total Description			Assign Group	
				Create	e Schedule			
								¥

# Figure 6.11 Create Schedule

- 1. The "Create Schedule" page is launched. See Figure 6.11.
- 2. Enter the Schedule No and Schedule Description.
- 3. Select the Schedule Classification, Book Type, Finance Book and Chart of Accounts.
- 4. Retrieve the account details using **Option, Account Classification, Account Group, Account Code From, To, Account Description**, **Schedule No From** and **To**.
- 5. Enter the Line No From, To, Group Heading and Total Description in the Group Account / Schedule group box.
- 6. Click the **Assign Group** pushbutton to create a group, in the schedule.
- 7. Click the **Create Schedule** pushbutton to create the schedule.

# 6.2.2 DELETE SCHEDULE

This sequence explains the process of selecting and deleting a single or multiple schedules.

# 121 | Book Keeping

ramco
-------

*	Edit Schedule						4 4 1 3	2 3 4	4 5 )	• •	1 /16		74 帚	4	+ 4	? [3	To K
	Schedule No.	BS001		Schedule	Description	Cash and Cash Equivalents			Effe	ective Date	2016-2	-04			11		Â
	Schedule Classification	Balance	Sheet		Book Type	Posting FB			Fin	nance Book	AVEOS						
	Chart of Accounts ID	AVEOS			Description	Aveos COA		d	hart of Acco	ounts Type	Operatio	e COA					
	Schedule Type	User Def	fined														
A	dd Account Code/Schedule No.																
	Account / Schedule	Account	t Code 🔍 💌	Ac	countCode 👂				Sched	dule No. 👂							
	Assign New Group			Gr	oup Heading				Total I	Description							
									Add	Account/	Schedule	Group					
A	ccount Code / Schedule No. Informati	ion															
-	4 1 - 5 / 23 → → + Ø	άT	τ.			٨.	x 🖂 🗎 🗶 <b>C</b>			All		_	Ŧ			Q	
	Include		Account Code / Schedule No	Description	n			Cla	ssification			Acco	unt Group	,		S	
1	Yes	~	110000	Petty Cash				Bal	ance Sheet	t i		ASSE	т				
2	Yes	~	111000	BMO Gene	eral CAD			Ba	ance Sheet	ŧ		ASSE	т				
3	Yes	~	111100	BMO BLO	CKED CAD			Ba	ance Sheet	E Constanting		ASSE	т				
4	Yes	~	111200	BMO EFT	Payments CAD			Ba	ance Sheet	E		ASSE	т				
5	Yes	~	111300	BMO CHQ	Payments CAD			Bal	ance Sheet	t i		ASSE	т				
	•															•	
-												_					
			Edit Schedule		Delete	e Schedule											
View S	chedule		c	opy Schedule													
_			Created by DMUSER				Crea	ated Date 2	2016-10-02								
		L	ast Modified bv				Last Mod	ified Date									*

Figure 6.11 Delete Schedule

- 1. Select the schedule to be deleted from the "Select Schedule" page.
- 2. The "Edit Schedule" page is launched. See Figure 6.12.

	arcn	Criteria							
		Schedule Classification	Balance Sheet 💌		Schedule Description		Chart of Accounts ID AVEOS 🔻		
		Book Type	Posting FB 🔍		Finance Book AVEOS 💌		Schedule Type User Defined	d v	
		Schedule No. From			То				Search
Sea	arch	Results							
44 4	L	1 - 10 / 16 🕨 🗰 🕂 🗇	O O T T			<b>7</b> m 0 x	🔀 🛱 🐺 🖷 🔳 🔺	Ŧ	Q
#	8	Schedule No.	Schedule Description	Book Type	Finance Book ID	Effective Date			
1		B5001	Cash and Cash Equivalents	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			-
2		BS002	Accounts Receivables	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
3		B5003	Inventories	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
4		B5004	Other Assets	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
5		B5005	Other Current Assets	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
6		BS007	Accounts Payable	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
7		B5008	Property, Plant and Equipment	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
8		B5009	Other Liabilities	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
9		BS010	Other Current Liabilities	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			
10		BS011	Short-term borrowings	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04			-

# Figure 6.12 Select Schedule

- 3. Click the Delete Schedule pushbutton to delete the schedule. Alternatively,
- 4. The "Select Schedule" page is launched. See Figure 6.13.
- 5. Search for the schedule using: Schedule Classification, Schedule Description, Chart of Accounts ID, Book Type, **Finance Book**, **Schedule No From** and **To**.
- 6. Select the schedule available in the multiline and click the **Delete Schedule** pushbutton to delete the selected schedule.



# Theme Statutory and Operational MIS: Scenario 3 – Financial Statement Layout Definition

S	Flow of Events	Primary	Component	Activity	UI Name	Functional Steps
No		Actor	Name	Name		
1	Create financial statement layout	Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Create Financial Statement Layout	<u>Create Financial</u> <u>Statement</u> <u>Layout</u>	<ol> <li>Enter Layout number and description.</li> <li>Select other details like layout classification, book type, FB and COA ld.</li> <li>Retrieve and add schedule details.</li> <li>Create layout.</li> </ol>
2	Create financial statement layout with assigning group heading and section heading	Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Create Financial Statement Layout	<u>Create Financial</u> <u>Statement</u> <u>Layout</u>	<ol> <li>Enter Layout number and description.</li> <li>Select other details like layout classification, book type, FB and COA Id.</li> <li>Retrieve and add schedule details.</li> <li>Assign group / section to the layout.</li> <li>Create layout.</li> </ol>
3	Delete layout	Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Edit layout	<u>Select layout</u>	1. Search for the layout based on the search criteria: layout classification, layout description, COA Id, book type, finance book and layout number.
		Finance Manager	Financial Statement Layout	Edit layout	<u>Select layout</u>	<ol> <li>Select one or more layouts to be deleted from the multiline.</li> <li>Delete the layout.</li> </ol>



# 6.3 FINANCIAL STATEMENT LAYOUT DEFINITION

The Financial Statement Layout component provides the user with default layouts of financial statements, which has been created in accordance with the US GAAP requirements. Apart from this the user can also define framework or layout as per requirements.

# 6.3.1 CREATE FINANCIAL STATEMENT LAYOUT

This sequence explains the process of creating financial statement layouts.

* [	Create F	inancial State	ement Layout						II X 등 다	← ? ⊡
		Layout N Layout Classificat Chart of Accounts	tion Income Statement	Layo	Book Type Posting Description Aveos		Chart c	Finance Book AVEO f Accounts Type Operat		
	rch Criteria	Opt Schedule No. Fr	ion All Schedules 💌	Sche	dule Description					Search
- Sea	rch Results									
44 4	1 - 5 / 1	6 🕨 👐 🕂	- 0 % 0 0 7 1			<u>۸</u>		All	v	Q
#	Line No.	Include		Schedule No.	Description			Sequence No	Add / Subtract	
1	8	1 No	*	R003	Sale of Goods				Add	
2		2 No	*	R005	Other Income				Add	
3		3 No	*	R006	Interest Income				Add	
4		4 No	•	R007	Profit or Loss on Sa				Add	
5		5 No	*	R010	Aircraft Fuel				Add	
	4									•
Gro	up Schedule									
_		L	ine No. From			То				
		G	roup Heading			Total Description				
		Sec	ction Heading			Section Description			Assign Group/Section	
					Create layou	ıt				
View Lay	out			Copy Layout			View Unmapped Accounts / Sci	nedules		
			Created by				Created Date			

# Figure 6.13 Create Financial Statement Layout

- 1. The "Create Financial Statement Layout" page is launched. See Figure 6.14.
- 2. Enter Layout No and Layout Description.
- 3. Select Layout Classification, Book Type, Finance Book and Chart of Accounts ID.
- 4. Retrieve schedule details using the search criteria: **Option**, **Schedule Description**, **Schedule No From** and **To**.
- 5. Include the schedules and click the **Create Layout** pushbutton to create the layout.

# 6.3.2 CREATE FINANCIAL STATEMENT LAYOUT WITH ASSIGNING GROUP AND SECTION HEADING

This section deals with creating financial statement layouts with group headings and section headings.



		ssification Income Statement 💌		Layout Description		Chart of Accounts ID			
		Sook Type Posting FB 💌		Finance Book AVEOS 💌		Layout Type		Ŧ	
	Layout	No. From		То			Search		
Search	n Results								
4		+ 0 0 C T T.						Ŧ	,c
	Layout No.	Layout Description	Book Type	Finance Book ID	Effective Date				
	IA_CA_CA_01	IA_CA_CA_01	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04				
	IS	Income statement	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04				

# Figure 6.14 Create Financial Statement Layout

- 1. The "Create Financial Statement Layout" page is launched. See Figure 6.15.
- 2. Enter Layout No and Layout Description.
- 3. Select Layout Classification, Book Type, Finance Book and Chart of Accounts ID.
- 4. Retrieve schedule details using the search criteria: **Option**, **Schedule Description**, **Schedule No From** and **To**.
- 5. Enter the Line No From, To, Group Heading, Total Description, Section Heading and Section Description, to be mapped to the layout.
- 6. Click the Assign Group / Section pushbutton to map the group/section to the layout.
- 7. Include the schedules and click the **Create Layout** pushbutton to create the layout with section and group headings.

# 6.3.3 DELETE LAYOUT

This section elaborates the process of selecting layouts for deletion.

*		Select Layout						= x;		+	?	0 K
		Layout No. From	ncome Statement V Insting FB V		Description ance Book AVEOS T	Char	t of Accounts ID Layout Type	AVEOS V User Defined Search	v			
-		1 - 2 / 2 → → + 🗇 Ø	C T T				All		Ŧ			Q
		Layout No.	Layout Description	Book Type	Finance Book ID	Effective Date						
1		IA_CA_CA_01	IA_CA_CA_01	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04						
2		IS	Income statement	Posting FB	AVEOS	2016-21-04						
3												
					Delete Layout							
Edit L	ayout											_

# Figure 6.15 Delete Layout

- 1. The **"Select Layout"** page is launched. See Figure 6.15.
- 2. Retrieve the layout to be deleted using the search criteria: Layout Classification, Layout Description, Chart of Accounts ID, Book Type, Finance Book, Layout No From and To.
- 3. Select the layout(s) to be deleted and click the **Delete Layout** pushbutton.

# FINANCIAL BOOK CLOSURE

Organizations record business transactions that have financial implications in its books of accounts. These are recorded in vouchers as accounting entries. The vouchers could be journal, reversal and memorandum vouchers. Vouchers can also be automatically generated in periodic intervals using a template.

The process of closing FBs ensures the accuracy and consistency of financial information. This process is a pre-requisite while deriving financial statements. The financial period / year can be closed using this process. Closure, freezes the account balances of a financial period, by preventing any further transactions being posted into that particular period. This will also prevent any manipulations in the finance books after the financial statements or reports have been drawn and published. It also reinstates the opening balances of the succeeding financial periods and calculates the retained earnings.

# Theme Financial Book Closure: Scenario 1 – Adjustment Entries Generation

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1	Create Regular Voucher with the Transaction Date same as the System Date	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Create Journal Voucher	<u>Create</u> Journal Voucher	<ol> <li>Create the regular journal voucher with control totals and foreign currency accounts.</li> </ol>
2	Create Regular Voucher in foreign currency without the control total check	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Set Function Defaults	<u>Set Functio</u> n <u>Defaults</u>	1. Set the parameter Input Control Total to "No".
				Create Journal Voucher	<u>Create</u> Journal Voucher	<ol> <li>Create the regular journal voucher without control totals and foreign currency accounts.</li> </ol>
3	Reverse Regular Voucher	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Reverse Journal Voucher	<u>Reverse</u> Journal Voucher	<ol> <li>Enter the voucher number to be reversed directly or select the voucher using search criteria.</li> <li>Reverse the journal voucher.</li> </ol>
4	Creation of a regular voucher using distribution setup	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Create Distribution Setup	<u>Create</u> <u>Distributio</u> n <u>Setup</u>	1. Create a distribution setup percentages for different account codes, with a total of total 100% on both the debit and credit side
		Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Create Journal Voucher	<u>Create</u> Journal Voucher	<ol> <li>Create a journal voucher using distribution setup and entering transaction amount.</li> </ol>
2	Create an accrual report for all the costs that have been not been booked against the SWOs and the revenue pending against those are accounted.	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Manage Accrual Run	<u>Manage</u> <u>Accrual run</u>	1. Create an accrual report for all the costs that have been not been booked.

ramco

# 7.1 ADJUSTMENT ENTRIES GENERATION

Adjustment entries are generated using a journal voucher. Journal voucher creation can be done in base currency, foreign currency, using control total check or distribution setup.

# 7.1.1 CREATE JOURNAL VOUCHER

This sequence explains the process of creating a regular journal voucher.

	Crea	te Journal	Vouch	ier													4	<b>+</b> ?	
			Transac	ucher No. tion Date r Category	2016-21-04						Type Regular Book AVE 💌	V		N	Status Iumbering Type JV	v			
		etails al Voucher D		v# ₽ JV	-000002-2011				Reverse Dr/Cr Flag	Ē	3					Copy JV			
	evers	R	eversal Vo sal Numbi	ucher No. ering Type ntrol Total	<b>•</b>					Reversa	Period 💌 I Date marks								
A	ccoun	ting Informa		ion No. 🔎						Transaction Ar	nount					Get			
44	H € 1 -2/2 > >> + = 0 ⊈ Q Q T T.												2 🗎 🗵	e # # III	All	Ψ.			Q
*		Account Coo	-		n Currency	Dr/Cr	Tr	ransaction Amount	Exchange Rate	Base Amount	Destination Finance Book	Destination Account Code 🖇	Remarks	Cost Center 🔎	Analysis Code 🔎	Sub Analysis Code	Expe	nse Classi	ficatic
1		120400		CAD		Dr	*	1000.00	1.00000000	1000.00	*								
2		411100		CAD CAD		Cr Dr	* *	1000.00	1.0000000	1000.00	*			1210					
		4		CAD		Di	•												•
Con	pute	Totals								Transaction An	ount				Base Amount				
										Debit	: Total				Debit Total				
										Credit	: Total				Credit Total				
			Create \	/oucher					Cr	eate And Authori	ize Voucher								
Attach	Notes						Edit Jo	ournal Voucher			Upload Document	5		View A	ssociated Doc. Attach	ments			
	Created by												G	eated Date					

# Figure 7.1 Create Journal Voucher

- 1. The "Create Journal Voucher" page is launched. See Figure 7.1.
- 2. Use the **Voucher Type** drop-down list box to select the type of voucher. The drop-down list box displays the following: Regular, Reversal, Memorandum, Inter FB, Tax Adj. Journal and Inter-Company.
- 3. Select the **Numbering Type** if voucher number is to be automatically or enter it manually.
- 4. In the Reversal Voucher Details group box, enter the Reversal Voucher # and select the Reversal Period and the **Reversal Numbering Type**.
- 5. Enter **Distribution No** and click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve account codes based on it.
- 6. Select Transaction Currency and enter Transaction Amount, Exchange Rate, Cost Center, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code, Expense Classification, Destination Finance Book and Destination Account Code.
  - Note: Usage "InterFB" must be defined in "Additional Rule Definition" of the current business component if account code is not provided and "Destination FB" is available.
  - Note: Destination FB must be selected for at least one row in the multiline if "InterFB" is specified as the "Voucher Type."
- 7. Select the Customer Order #, SWO #, AME #, and Ref Doc Type for the voucher.
- 8. Select the **Customer #** and **Supplier #** for the voucher.
- 9. Click the Compute Totals pushbutton to calculate the Transaction Amount and Base Amount.
- 10. Click the Create Voucher pushbutton to create a regular journal voucher.
- 11. Click the **Create and Authorize** pushbutton to create the voucher in authorized status.



# 7.1.2 SET FUNCTION DEFAULTS

This sequence elaborates the process of setting functional defaults for the Journal Voucher component. You can also allow for reversal of transactions in the future period.

* 🗎 Set Function Defaults	7‡ i	+	?	ō K	1
input Control Total Yes 💌					
Default Exchange Rate Type Buying Rate					
Allow multiple Finance Book Postings No 🐨					
Default Finance Book AVE 💌					
Default Numbering Type for Accrual Journal JVA 🐨					
Default Numbering Type for Accrual Journal - Reversal RAJV 💌					
Default Numbering Type for Accrual Run # ACC ▼					
Lead time for Accrual Processing after Period end date 1					
Allow Future Period Reversals 🛛 Yes 💌					
Set					
Last Modified Date 2015-17-11					

# Figure 7.2 Set Function Defaults

- 1. The "Set Function Defaults" page is launched. See Figure 7.2.
- 2. Set Input Control Total to "No".
- 3. Click the **Set** pushbutton to save the function defaults.

# 7.1.3 REVERSE JOURNAL VOUCHER

This sequence details the process of reversing a regular journal voucher and its implications.

* 🗎	1	Reverse Journal Voucher					••	1 2 3 4 5	₩ 1	/1066 📰 🗆	: 7	≓ ∢	- ?	Ø K
- Reve	erse	ed Voucher Details												_ `
		Reversal Voucher No.							S	tatus				
		Reversal Date 2011-30-11	(iii)	Reversal	Numbering Type	RJV 💌			Ren	narks				
- Orig	inal	l Voucher Details												
		Voucher No. JV-000002-20	011		Voucher Type					tatus Authorized				
		Transaction Date 2011-30-11			Finance Book	AVEOS		Vou	cher Cate	igory				
		Control Total 1000.00			Remarks									
44 4		1 - 2 / 2 <b>&gt; &gt;&gt; - T T</b>									•			Q
* E		Account Code 👂	Account Description	Dr / Cr		Transaction Currency		Transaction Amount		Exchange Rate		Ba	se Amour	ot .
1 8	3	120400	A/R Accruals CAD	Dr		CAD			1000.00		1.000000	00		
2 8	3	411100	Material Revenue CAD	Cr		CAD	1000.00				1.000000	00		
		4												•
				Trans	saction Amount			1	lase Am	ount				
					Debit Total	1000.00			Debit	Total 1000.00				
					Credit Total	1000.00			Credit	Total 1000.00				
	-													_
					Reverse	Voucher								
Attach No														
	~													_
			Created by					Created Date						-

# Figure 7.3 Reverse Journal Voucher

- 1. Select the regular voucher to be reversed from the **Select Journal Voucher** page.
- 2. The **Reverse Journal Voucher** page is launched. *See Figure 7.3*.
- 3. Enter Reversal Voucher No or select Numbering Type for voucher number generation.
- 4. Enter **Remarks**, if any.
- 5. Enter Cost Center, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code and Expense Classification for every Account Code in the multiline.
- 6. Click the **Reverse Voucher** pushbutton to reverse the regular journal voucher.
  - >> Note: InterFB vouchers cannot be reversed.

# 7.1.4 AUTHORIZING JOURNAL VOUCHER

You can authorize or return a journal voucher. Only those vouchers in "Fresh" status can be authorized or returned. You

can also modify the voucher details before authorization. Upon authorization, the vouchers details will be posted to the selected finance book.

The system updates the status of the voucher to "Authorized" after authorization. The system updates the status of the voucher to "Returned" after rejection of the voucher. The vouchers, which are in "Returned" status, attain the "Fresh" status upon modification.

- 1. Select the Authorize Journal Voucher link under the Journal Voucher business component. The Select Journal Voucher page appears.
- 2. Specify fields in the Search Criteria group box to retrieve journal vouchers of your choice.
- 3. Click the desired **Voucher No** data hyperlink in the **Search Results** multiline. The **Authorize Journal Voucher** page appears. *See Figure 7.4*.

*		Authorize Journal Voucher					44 4	1 2 3	4 5 🕨 🕪 1 ,	/77 🗐 🚅 🖶 🛱	•	? 🗔
		Voucher No. JV-000421-2015 Transaction Date 2015-09-09 sal Voucher Details				Type Inter Company Book AVEOS			Status Voucher Category	Fresh		
-	Keve	Reversal Voucher No. Reversal Date		Rev	ersal F	Period						
-	Accou	Control Total			Rer	marks						
44		Distribution No. ₽ 1 - 2 / 2 → → + - □ + ○ ☆		Transact	tion An	nount			all 🗐	Get		Q
44	1	Account Code $\mathcal{P}$	T T <sub>x</sub> Account Description	Dr/Cr		Transaction Currency		Transaction Amo		Exchange Rate		Base An
1	E	-	Foreign Travel Expenses	Dr	*	EUR	*		1000.00		0000000	
2		510004	Foreign Travel Expenses	Cr	×	CAD	~		1100.00	1.0	0000000	
3	E			Dr	*	CAD	*					
		<										>
Co	npute	Total	Т	ransactio	on Am	ount			Base Amount			
					Debit	Total 1000.00			Debit Total	1100.00		
					Credit	Total 1100.00			Credit Total	1100.00		
					-	Authorize Voucher			Reb	urn Voucher		
Atta	h Note	S	Upload Documents					View Associated	Doc. Attachments			
					Creat	ed by DMUSER			Created Date	2015-09-09		
				Last	Modifi	ed by			Last Modified Date			

# Figure 7.4 Authorize Journal Voucher

Prior to authorization/return; if required, you can:

- 4. Modify Transaction Date and Voucher Category,
- 5. In the Reversal Voucher Details group box, modify Reversal Period and Control Total.
- 6. In the Accounting Information group box, modify Distribution No. and Transaction Amount.
- 7. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the accounting information in the multiline.
- 8. In the multiline, modify Account Code, Transaction Currency, Transaction Amount and Exchange Rate.
- 9. Modify Cost Center, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code, Expense Classification, Destination Finance Book, Ref. Doc. **Type** and **Ref. Doc. #**,
- 10. Modify tax details including TCD #, Variant # and Taxable Amount.
- 11. Modify Customer Order #, AME #, SWO #, Customer # and Supplier #.
- 12. Click the Compute Totals pushbutton to calculate the transaction and base amount totals.
- 13. Click the Authorize Voucher pushbutton to authorize the vouchers.
- 14. Click the **Return Voucher** pushbutton to return the vouchers.

# 7.1.5 CREATE DISTRIBUTION SETUP

This sequence explains the process of creating a distribution setup by assigning debit and credit percentage totals



# for account codes.

Accour	Distribution No. 37/004 Description Distribution				Finance Book AVEOS V				Status Numbering Type	lser 🔻			
4 4													
	Image: Code ρ         Account Description         Dr/Cr         Transaction Currency         Percentage         Cost Center ρ         Analysis Code ρ         Sub Analysis Code ρ												
			Dr	*	CAD	~							
`ompute	Total	Del	bit Percentage Total					Credit Pe	ercentage Total				
					Create Distribution Setup								
it Distribut	tion Setup												

# Figure 7.5 Create Distribution Setup

- 1. The "Create Distribution Setup" page is launched. See Figure 7.5.
- 2. Enter the Distribution No or select Numbering Type in the header.
- 3. Enter Description and select Finance Book.
- 4. Enter **Account Code** manually or retrieve using the help facility.
- 5. Select Dr/Cr and Transaction Currency and enter Percentage, Cost Center, Analysis Code and Sub Analysis Code for every account code.
- 6. Click the **Compute Total** pushbutton to compute the debit and credit percentage totals.
- 7. Click the Create Distribution Setup pushbutton to create the distribution setup.
- 8. Select the "Create Journal Voucher" link to create a journal voucher using distribution setup.

# 7.1.6 MANAGE ACCRUAL RUN

This activity allows you to process for revenue and cost accruals on all booked and un-booked shop work orders and enables you to account for the same at the financial period / year closure.

				rual Run						1	≭ = □ ← ?	
	cun t	Detai		Accrual Run # From Ø ACC-000015-2015			Run Date	2016-04-04	1	Status		
	locru	ual Pr	ocessin	Company Name CB Airways g Information			Finance Book	AVEOS				
	4			• • • • • • • • • •				μ.		Al III	T	Q
=	8	5	#	Accrue for	Select	Report File Name	Processing	Remarks	Journal Voucher #	Reversal Journal Voucher #		Run Ste
1	E		1	Service Sales								
2	6		2	Resource Accruals for In-progress Tasks -								
3	E		3	Resource Accruals for In-progress Tasks -								
4	E											
		4										Þ
	leco	rd St	atistics	Initiate Accrual Run				Cancel Accrual Run			Process JV	
				Created by Last Modified by						Created Date Iodified Date		

# Figure 7.6 Manage Accrual Run

- 1. The "Manage Accrual Run" page is launched. See Figure 7.6.
- 2. Enter the Run Date till when the accrual report is run. Once run the user cannot enter an earlier date.
- 3. Select the Finance Book for which the accrual run is done.
- 4. Click the "Initiate Accrual Run" pushbutton to generate an accrual report.
  - Note: A unique number is generated for the "Accrual Run #" and the status of report is updated as "Active".

- 5. To cancel an accrual report, enter the Accrual Run # From.
- 6. Click the **"Cancel Accrual Run"** pushbutton to cancel the accrual run and the same combination of Finance Book and Run Date is made available for accrual if required.
  - >> Note: The status of the accrual report is updated as "Cancelled".
- 7. Click the "Process JV" pushbutton to process the journal voucher for the specified date and generate a journal voucher.
  - Note: A journal voucher is created and income is accounted.

# 7.1.7 MAINTAIN ALLOCATION & DISTRIBUTION RULES

Common expenses incurred at an indirect Cost Center needs to be allocated across multiple direct Cost Centers. Similarly common expenses incurred at a particular Finance Book needs to be allocated across multiple Finance Books. This activity enables to capture such Allocation Rules from source to destination across Finance Books, Account Codes, Cost Centers, Analysis Codes, Sub Analysis Code & Expense classification. The Rule ID can be generated for a finance book or for all finance books.

mation											
Com		VEOS	▼ All	Ŧ	Rule II			Сору	Rule	Desc.	
	Status A	ctive	•		Effective Date	1	- 🛗	i			
	ion Type G	L Allocation		•	Allocation Category	GL ALLOCATION		7	Numberin	g Type RUL 🔻	
1 -1/1 🕨	₩ +	- 0 %	T Tx			2		1 X4	e 🗏 🖮 111 Al	▼	J
Account Code 🔎	Cost Cent	ter 🔎	Analysis Code 🔎	Sub Analysis Code 🔎	Exp. Cls. 🔎	%	Account Code Desc.	С	ost Center Desc.	Analysis Code Desc.	
1001004	7910		ANA00	B0000		1	Freight Charges	7	910 - SG&A Marketing	ANALYSIS	
<											>
n	Percentage		T	Allocation Element		•					>
n		- 0 *	T Tx	Allocation Element			l I X X		6 # H II AI	V	>
n Basis of Allocation					Analysis Code 👂 S			1 X <sup>1</sup> %	e 🏨 🖬 💵 Al	Cost Center Desc.	ļ
n Basis of Allocation F 1 - 1 / 1 F Company	₩ <b>+</b>	e Book	T Tx		Analysis Code 👂 🛛 S	Å				1 1	ļ
Basis of Allocation F 1 - 1 / 1 F Company AVEOS	+ + Finance	e Book	• T T <sub>x</sub> Account Code <b>P</b> • 1001004	Cost Center 👂	Analysis Code 🖉 🛛 S	Å			Account Code Desc.	Cost Center Desc.	) Analy
Basis of Allocation F 1 - 1 / 1 F Company AVEOS	<ul> <li>+</li> <li>Finance</li> <li>ABC-PF</li> </ul>	e Book =B2 🗸	• T T <sub>x</sub> Account Code <b>P</b> • 1001004	Cost Center 👂	Analysis Code 🖉 S	Å			Account Code Desc.	Cost Center Desc.	J
	1 - 1 / 1 🕨 Account Code 🔎	Allocation Type C	Allocation Type GL Allocation	Allocation Type GL Allocation 1 - 1 / 1 $\blacktriangleright$ $\blacktriangleright$ + - $\square \not \leftarrow$ T T <sub>c</sub> Account Code $\square$ Cost Center $\square$ Analysis Code $\square$	Allocation Type GL Allocation $\checkmark$ $\checkmark$ 1 -1/1 $\rightarrow$ $\rightarrow$ + - $\bigcirc$ $\checkmark$ $\checkmark$ T. Account Code $\wp$ Cost Center $\wp$ Analysis Code $\wp$ Sub Analysis Code $\wp$	Allocation Type     GL Allocation     ▼     Allocation Category       1     -1 / 1     >>> +     -     □     ✓     ▼     T       Account Code P     Cost Center P     Analysis Code P     Sub Analysis Code P     Exp. Cls. P	Allocation Type GL Allocation	Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Category GL ALLOCATION ▼ 1 -1/1 → → + - □ ≠ ▼ ▼. Account Code P Cost Center P Analysis Code P Sub Analysis Code P Exp. Gs. P % Account Code Desc.	Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Category GL ALLOCATION	Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Type GL Allocation Category GL ALLOCATION V Numberin 1 -1/1 + >> + - C + Y Y. Account Code P Cost Center P Analysis Code P Sub Analysis Code P Exp. Cls. P % Account Code Desc. Cost Center Desc.	Allocation Type       GL Allocation       Allocation Category       GL ALLOCATION       V       Numbering Type       RUL       V         1       -1/1       >>>       +       - <td< td=""></td<>

# Figure 7.22 Maintain Allocation and Distribution Rules

- 1. The "Maintain Allocation and Distribution Rules" page is launched. See Figure 7.10.
- 2. Use the **Company/FB** drop-down list box to select the company and the finance book for which the Rule ID is to be generated.
- 3. Enter the **Rule ID** using the hyperlinked **Copy** to modify the existing Rules.
- 4. Enter the Rule Desc. to specify the description of the rule.
- 5. Enter the Effective Date From which specifies the date from which the Rule is effective.
- 6. Enter the Account Code, Cost Center, Analysis Code and Sub-Analysis Code in the source multiline which will be split up in combination given in destination section.
  - Note: Combination provided in the source section ML can be at any level for all lines and combination at one line should not exceed 100%.
- 7. Enter the Account Code, Cost Center, Analysis Code and Sub-Analysis Code in the Destination multiline which will have balance in the % specified in destination section. This balance will be moved from source section.
  - Note: Combination provided in the destination section for all lines should be same. The sum of % should be 100 for all the lines in destination section.
- 8. Click the **Save** pushbutton to manage the Allocation and Distribution Rules.

# 7.1.8 MANAGE ALLOCATION PACKAGES

The Common Expenses incurred at Cost Center, Account Code, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code, Expense Classification level in a finance Book needs to be allocated across multiple Cost Centers and Finance Books. This also facilitates permanent allocation. This activity enables the sequencing of generated Rule ID's and packaging the Allocation Rules.

★ 🗎 Manage Allocation I	ackages					겨 중 다 두 1	
Compan Statu Date fror Fin. Perio <b>Rule Details</b>	Active	•	Package # Fin. Year 01 Jan 2 Date to Jultiple Rules? No v		Rec	Desc. package description rurning? No v n After Day(s) ig Type PKG v	Q
# Seg # Rule ID	+ LP T T <sub>×</sub> Rule Desc.	Status	Allocation Type	Effective from	Effective to	Allocation Category	þ
	1000 0000	510105	/ mocodon / ypc	Encenterion	Enclore to	/ motoboli cortegoly	
2							
Record Statistics			Save				
	Created by				Created Date		
	Last Modified by				Last Modified Date		

# Figure 7.23 Manage Allocation Packages

- 1. The "Manage Allocation Packages" page is launched. See Figure 7.10.
- 2. Use the **Company/FB** drop-down list box to select the company and the finance book for which the Allocation Packages is to be generated.
- 3. Enter the **Package Desc.** to specify the description of the Allocation Package.
- 4. Use the **Recurring?** drop-down list box to specify whether the package is recurring or not.
- 5. Enter the Date from, Date to and Run After fields for the Allocation Package.

🖎 Note - Values has to be entered in these fields only if Recurring is selected as 'Period'.

For Example - If date from and date to is 1st Jan 17 to 31st Jan 17 and Run after days is 3 days then scheduler will run on 4th feb and create a recurring voucher on 4th of every month for all succeeding months till the date to..

- 6. Enter the Seq # and Rule ID in the Rule Details multiline to create the packages of Rule IDs in the required sequence.
- 7. Click the Save pushbutton to create the Allocation Package.

# 7.1.9 REVIEW/PROCESS ALLOCATION PACKAGES

The Common Expenses incurred at Cost Center, Account Code, Analysis Code, Sub Analysis Code, Expense Classification level in a finance Book needs to be allocated across multiple Cost Centers and Finance Books. This also facilitates permanent allocation. This activity enables the generation of Run # for packages initiated.



	ocess Allocation	n Packages							44	4 6 7	8 9 10 + +	10 /11 🎞		€ ?	0
ocation Run Info.															
	Company/FB AVE	OS /	AVEOS			Fin.	rear FY201				Fin. Pe	riod DEC17			
	Package # PKG	-000027-2017				R	in # RUN-000010-201	.7			St	atus Processed			
cess Run															
Rule # All		•	Rule Line #	•											
Detail															
📢 🐧 [No records t	o display] 🕟 🕠	+ 0 • •	τ.				А	n s x	民間	x, 6 1 4	III AI	T		Q	
	Finance Book Rule			Account Code	Cost Center	Analysis Code					Original Allocated Amt	Available Balance	Remarks		
1															
<														>	
		Save								Post	t JV				

# Figure 7.24 Review/Process Allocation Packages

- 1. Select the Manage Allocation Packages under the Journal Voucher business component.
- 2. The "Select Packages" page is launched.
- 3. Enter the Search Criteria and click the Search pushbutton.
- 4. Select the **Run #** to be initiated/cancelled, in the multiline.
- 5. Click the Initiate pushbutton to generate the Run#.
- 6. Click the Cancel Run # pushbutton to cancel the Run #.
- 7. Click the hyperlinked **Run #** in the multiline. The Review/Process Allocation Packages page is launched. *See Figure* 7.11.
- 8. Use the Rule # and Rule Line #drop-down list box to retrieve the details in the multiline.
- 9. Click the **Save** pushbutton to save the allocation package.
- 10. Click the Post JV pushbutton to generate the Journal Voucher

# 7.1.10 REVIEW ACCOUNTING INFORMATION

This screen enables the user to reallocate the cost/revenue for the work order. The screen provides the visibility of the details of cost and revenue which has been booked against the customer order. Hence, the review of end-to-end accounting entries for a particular document / order as well as modification of the accounting information can be performed by the user.

### **Review Accounting Information** \* 7 2 5 Doc. Type / Doc. # Customer Order -Include JV () Yes O No Get Q Search Result Doc. Typ Doc # Doc. Status Trading Partner Type Trading Partner# / Na Ext. Rep. Rev. Ext. Ser. Rev. Other Rev. Fixed Rev. Usage Rev. at. Rev Res. Rev bcont. Rev. ok. Rev Basic Value Tax 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 Ext. Rep. Cost Ext. Ser. Cost Other Cost Total value Mat Cost Res. Cost Subcont, Cost CNQ Cost. 0.00 Ch 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 nary Detail Accounting Information View By Order Level Document Level # Order Type Order # Document Type Document # Account Code Account Code Desc. Entity Cost Center Cost Center Desc. 1 < > Debit Total Credit Total Add For Adjustments Generate Adjust 1 -1/1 > >> + - 🗗 🛠 👅 🔩 ρ 44 4 # Finance Book Account Code P Account Code Desc Dr / Cr Base Amount Entity Cost Center Q Cost Center Desc. Analysis C 1 DR ABC 2 CR < Compute Totals Dehit Total Credit Total Preview Posting Date 06-12-2018 enerate Journal Vouch Report On GL Transaction **Create Journal Vouche**

# Figure 7.25 Review Accounting Information

- 1. Select the **Review Accounting Information** under the **Journal Voucher** business component. *See Figure 7.25.*
- 2. Select the **Doc Type** and enter the **Doc #**.
- 3. Select the **Include JV** radio button to include the journal vouchers for the view and modification of accounting information and click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the search results.
- 4. In the **Summary** tab, select the **View By** radio button as Order level, to view the order level accounting information or Document level, to view the document level accounting information.
- 5. In the **Detail** tab, the accounting information is displayed in the detailed level.
- 6. On Click of the Add for Adjustment pushbutton, all the lines selected moves to Generate Adjustment section for adjustment, with the Order # in Co # field, Document in SWO or AME field if available, 'Account code', 'Cost Center', 'Analysis', 'Sub Analysis', 'Expense Classification', 'Finance Book' and 'Entity'.
- 7. On click of **Compute** pushbutton, the 'Debit Total' and 'Credit Total' gets updated based on the Base Amount, if only SWO/ AME are provided.
- 8. On Click of **Preview** pushbutton, Search result section gets refreshed. The delta information provided in the 'Generate adjustment' section will get reflected in the Cards showing the adjustment entry passed.
- 9. On click of the **Generate Journal Voucher** pushbutton, 'Journal Voucher #' gets generated in 'Authorized' status and gets updated in the "Journal Voucher #" field of the 'Generate Adjustment' section.

# Theme Financial Book Closure: Scenario 2 – Year End Adjustment Entries Generation with Reversal Option

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Steps Description
1	Create Reversal Voucher with the Reversal Date in the Succeeding Open Period	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Create Journal Voucher	<u>Create</u> Journal <u>Vouch</u> <u>er</u>	<ol> <li>Raise a reversal voucher as on system date with the reversal period as the immediate succeeding open period.</li> </ol>

# 7.2 YEAR END ADJUSTMENT ENTRIES GENERATION WITH REVERSAL OPTION

Provisional entries created during financial period closure or during financial year closure are normally reversed during the subsequent financial period or financial year. This voucher type is used to enter such transactions, which will be automatically reversed during a specified future financial period that is the first date of the specified financial period.

# 7.2.1 CREATE REVERSAL JOURNAL VOUCHER

This sequence explains the process of creating a reversal journal voucher.

	Crea	te Journal Vou	cher												티 그	4	<b>←</b> ?	6
			/oucher No.						Voucher	Type Regular	v			Status				
		Trans	action Date	2016-21-04	+		Ē		Finance	Book AVEOS 🔻			N	lumbering Type JV	T			
			her Category	Ŧ														
-	Copy D	letails																
		Сор	y JV# ₽ _JV	-000003-201	1			Reverse Dr/Cr Flag	E						Copy JV			
	Revers	al Voucher Details																
		Reversal	Voucher No.						Reversal F	Period 🔹								
		Reversal Nu	mbering Type						Reversal	Date								
			Control Total						Ren	marks								
-	ccoun	ting Information																
	Distribution No. P								Transaction An	nount		Get						
44	•	1 - 2 / 2 🕨 🗰	+ - 1	0 * •	ά τ	Τ.					<b>A E 0 X 5</b>		e # # III	All	•			Q
=		Account Code 🔎	Transactio	on Currency	Dr/Cr		Transaction Amount	Exchange Rate	Base Amount	Destination Finance Book	Destination Account Code 🔎	Remarks	Cost Center 👂	Analysis Code 🔎	Sub Analysis Code	Expe	nse Classif	catic
1		120400	CAD	~	Dr	~	1000.00	1.00000000	1000.00	*								
2		411100	CAD	~	Cr	~	1000.00	1.00000000	1000.00	*			1210					
3			CAD	~	Dr	*				*								
		4																•
Co	npute	Totals							Transaction Am	ount				Base Amount				
-									Debit	Total				Debit Total				
									Credit	Total				Credit Total				
_	_					_												_
	Create Voucher							Cr	eate And Authoriz	ze Voucher								
Attack	Notes Edit Journal Voucher								Upload Documents View Associated Doc. Attachments									
					Created b	/						Cre	eated Date					

# Figure 7.7 Create Reversal Journal Voucher

- 1. The "Create Journal Voucher" page is launched. See Figure 7.7.
- 2. Select the Voucher Type as "Reversal".
- 3. Enter Voucher No or select Numbering Type.
- 4. Enter Transaction Date and select Finance Book.
- 5. Select the Reversal Period and Reversal Numbering Type or enter Reversal Voucher No.
- 6. Enter Control Total and Remarks.
- 7. Enter **Distribution No** manually or use the help facility.
- 8. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the account details of the distribution setup.
- 9. Enter Transaction Amount, Cost Center, Analysis Code and Sub Analysis Code.
- 10. Select the Customer Order #, SWO #, AME #, and Ref Doc Type for the voucher.
- 11. Select the **Customer #** and **Supplier #** for the voucher.
- 12. Click the Compute Totals to calculate Transaction Amount and Base Amount.
- 13. Click the **Create Voucher** pushbutton to create a reversal voucher.
- 14. Click the Create and Authorize pushbutton to create the reversal voucher in authorized status.
- 15. Click the **Print Journal Voucher** pushbutton to print the reversal journal voucher details.

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1	Create Recurring Voucher Template to generate vouchers in "Authorized" status	Finance Manager	VL	Create Recurring Voucher Template	<u>Create</u> <u>Recurring</u> <u>Voucher</u> <u>Template</u>	<ol> <li>Create a Recurring Voucher Template with the recurring voucher status as "Authorized", and the frequency as "Monthly" giving the period range.</li> </ol>
2	Create Recurring Voucher Template to generate voucher in "Unauthorized" status	Finance Manager	VL	Create Recurring Voucher Template	<u>Create</u> <u>Recurring</u> <u>Voucher</u> <u>Template</u>	<ol> <li>Create a Recurring         Voucher Template with the         recurring voucher status         as "Unauthorized" and the         frequency as "Monthly" giving         the period range.     </li> </ol>



# 7.3 ACCRUE SERVICE REVENUE AND COST

You can process revenue and cost accruals on all customer orders in open status and enables you to account for the same at the financial period / year closure.

1. Select Accrue Service Revenue and Cost under the "Journal Voucher" business component. The Accrue Service **Revenue and Cost** page is launched. *See Figure 7.8* 

* 🗎 Accrue Service Revenue and Cost			= =	₽ ← ? ⊡ ⊠
<ul> <li>Processing Details</li> </ul>				<b>^</b>
Voucher No.	Numbering Typ	pe JVA 👻	Status	
Voucher Date 2016-31-03	Finance Boo	ok AVEOS 🔻		
Financial Year FY16 💌	Financial Perio	od MAR 💌	Get	
<ul> <li>Reversal Information</li> </ul>				
Reversal Voucher No.	Reversal Numbering Typ	pe RAJV 🔻	Status	
Reversal Voucher Date 2016-01-04	Remark	ks	Process	
<ul> <li>Accrual Information</li> </ul>				
Accrued Revenue	Accrued Co	st		
📢 🖪 [No records to display] >>>> + 🔅 🔅 🝸 📆			🕸 🗉 🔺 💌	Q
# Ref. Doc type Reference Doc #	Currency Material Revenue (Tran)	Resource Revenue (Tran)	Repair Revenue (Tran)	Total Reven
1				
4				• •
Export Criteria				
Customer Group	Report Form	at Task Level Summary 💌		
Create	Edit	Confirm	Export to Excel	
Accounting Information				
Run By		Run	Date	•

# Figure 7.8 Accrue Service Revenue and Cost

- 2. Enter the journal voucher number in the **Voucher #** field.
- 3. Select the Numbering Type for the login organization unit.
- 4. Select the **Finance Book** in which the voucher entries are to be posted.
- 5. Select the **Financial Year** and **Financial Period** for which the accrual processing is to be done, and click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the details of the voucher already created.
- 6. Enter the reversal voucher number in the **Reversal Voucher #** field.
- 7. Click the **Process** pushbutton to retrieve all the customer orders for which the accrual processing is to be done.
- 8. The system displays the Accrued Revenue and Accrued Cost using the Material Revenue (Tran), Resource Revenue (Tran), Material Cost and Resource Cost displayed in the Accrual Summary multiline.
- 9. In the **Export Criteria** group box, select the customer group for which the accrual processing details need to be viewed in the excel sheet.
- 10. Select the **Report Format** in which the accrual processing details need to be viewed in the excel sheet, from "Task Level Summary", "Resource Details", "Material Details" and "Repair Order details".
- 11. Click the **Create** pushbutton to create the voucher.
- 12. Click the Edit pushbutton to edit the voucher.
- 13. Click the **Confirm** pushbutton to confirm the voucher.
- 14. Click the **Export To Excel** pushbutton to export the voucher details to Microsoft Excel. You can proceed to do the following:

• Select the **Accounting Information** link at the bottom of the page to view the details of the transactions that have been posted to the account of the corresponding finance book of the company.

# 7.4 RECURRING VOUCHER GENERATION

Recurring Vouchers are entries relating to transactions, which recur at regular intervals. The user can design a recurring voucher template to create journal vouchers, which would recur at regular intervals. The recurring vouchers are generated based on the frequency of posting and the effective date range.

# 7.4.1 CREATE RECURRING VOUCHER TEMPLATE

This sequence describes the process of creating a recurring voucher template for generating vouchers at regular interval.

	🔋 Create Recurring Voucher Template												Κ								
	oucher Information																				<b>^</b>
	Template #				Numbering Type JVRC					▼ Status											
	Finance Book		•		Effective Date Fr	om		(iii)				Effec	Effective Date To				(III)				
	Posting Frequency	Monthly	Ψ.	1	Numbering Type for Rec.Vouch		RC	•			Rec	urring V	oucher Stat					Ŧ			
	Control Total				Voucher Categ	ory		*					Remar	ks							
- '	Distribution No. Distribution				Transaction Amo	unt									Get						
-					Transaction Amo	une				ii ∞ ¢			All		ici .	Ŧ		_		ρ	
•	Interpretation (Interpretation) (Int		≪ Q St T T, Account Description		Dr / Cr		Transaction Currency		XX	Transaction				Exchang	Exchange Rate		R	ase Amo			
1			ccount beachpaon		Dr	~ c			~				Exchang	c reacc							
Con	npute Total				Transaction Amou							E	Base Amou	nt							
					Debit Total			Debit Total													
L	Credit Total Credit Total									_											
Create Template												Ш									
Edit R	ecurring Voucher Template																				
						Ьу							Created Da	ate							-

# Figure 7.9 Create Recurring Voucher Template

- 1. The "Create Recurring Voucher Template" page is launched. See Figure 7.9.
- 2. Enter the **Template No** manually or select the **Numbering Type**.
- 3. Select Finance Book and enter Effective Date From and To
- 4. Select the **Posting Frequency** as "Monthly".
- 5. Set the Numbering Type for Recurring Vouchers and select the Recurring Voucher Status as "Fresh" or "Authorized".
- 6. Enter **Distribution No** and click **Get** pushbutton retrieve the account codes in the multiline.
- 7. Enter Transaction Amount, Cost Center, Analysis Code and Sub Analysis Code and select Transaction Currency for every account.
- 8. Select the Customer Order #, SWO #, AME #, and Ref Doc Type for the voucher.
- 9. Select the **Customer #** and **Supplier #** for the voucher.
- 10. Select the account codes and click the **Compute Totals** pushbutton to calculate the transaction and base amount.
- 11. Click Create Template to create a template in either "Fresh" or "Authorized" status



# Theme Financial Book Closure: Scenario 4 – Memorandum Voucher Generation

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor(s)	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1.	Create Memorandum Voucher	Finance Manager	Journal Voucher	Create Journal Voucher	<u>Create Journal</u> <u>Voucher</u>	1. Create a memorandum voucher
2.	Convert Memorandum Voucher of a Open Period to a Regular Voucher			Convert Memorandum Voucher	<u>Convert</u> <u>Memorandum</u> <u>Voucher</u>	<ol> <li>Select a memorandum voucher</li> <li>Convert the memorandum voucher to a regular voucher</li> </ol>

# 7.5 MEMORANDUM VOUCHER GENERATION

Organizations simulate financial entries, to see its impact on account balances. This can be used to do a 'What If' analysis, which will be instrumental in business decision-making. Memorandum journal vouchers are quasi vouchers. The entries are not posted in the books of accounts. However they can be used to see the impact on account balances.

# 7.5.1 CREATE JOURNAL VOUCHER

This sequence elaborates the process of creating a memorandum journal voucher.

	Crea	te Journal Vou	cher													■ × ē	≓ <b>+</b> ? ⊡ ⊑
		Trans	<b>/oucher No.</b> action Date her Category				m			Type Regular Book AVEOS 💌	Ŧ			Ν	Status Iumbering Type JV	T	
Copy JV# ₽ JV-000001-2011     Reversal Voucher Details							]	Reverse Dr/Cr Flag			Сору ЈУ						
Reversal Voucher No. Reversal Numbering Type						Reversal Pariod  Reversal Date Remarks											
A	ccour		oution No. <b>P</b>					Transaction Amount				Get					
44		1 - 2 / 2 🕨 🗰											_			<b>•</b>	Q
		Account Code 👂	Transaction				ransaction Amount			Destination Finance Book	Destination Accou	unt Code 👂	Remarks	Cost Center 👂	Analysis Code 🔎	Sub Analysis Code	Expense Classificatic
1		131000 130000	CAD		Dr	*	1000.00	1.00000000	1000.00	*							
3			CAD		Dr	*	1000100	100000000	1000100	*							
		4															4
Con	npute	Totals						Transaction Amount				Base Amount					
									Debi	t Total	Debit Total						
							Credi	t Total					Credit Total				
Create Voucher								Create And Authorize Voucher									
Attach Notes Edit Journal Vo					ournal Voucher	al Voucher Upload Documents View Associated					ssociated Doc. Attach	nments					
	Created by												Cre	ated Date			

# Figure 7.10 Create Memorandum Voucher

- 1. The "Create Journal Voucher" page is launched. See Figure 7.10.
- 2. Use the **Voucher Type** drop-down list box to select the type of voucher you wish to create.
- 3. Select the Voucher Type as "Memorandum".
- 4. Enter the **Voucher No** or select the **Numbering Type** in the header.
- 5. Enter Transaction Date and select Finance Book.
- 6. Enter the **Distribution No**, if applicable and click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the account codes in the multiline.
- 7. Enter the Transaction Amount and select Dr/Cr and Transaction Currency.
- 8. Select the Customer Order #, SWO #, AME #, and Ref Doc Type for the voucher.
- 9. Select the **Customer #** and **Supplier #** for the voucher.
- 10. Click the **Compute Totals** pushbutton to calculate the transaction amount and base amount.
- 11. Click the Create Voucher pushbutton to create a memorandum voucher

# 7.5.2 CONVERT MEMORANDUM VOUCHER

This sequence explains the process of converting a memorandum journal voucher to a regular voucher.



* 🗎	* 🔋 Convert Memorandum Voucher to Regular Voucher ************************************										
	Voucher No. Remarks Numbering Type JV V										
- Origin	Original Voucher Details										
	Voucher No. MJV-000182	-2014									
	Transaction Date 2012-03-06			Finance Book AVEOS							
	Control Total			Remarks							
- Accou	Inting Information								_		
44 4	1 - 2 / 2 🕨 🗰 🗕 🝸 🏋					🐺 🖷 💷 🔺	•		Q		
# 8	Account Code	Account Description	Dr/Cr	Transaction Currency	Transaction Amount	Exchange Rate	Base Amount		Rem		
1	200100	A/P Trade CAD	Cr	CAD	2500.0	0 1.0000	000	2500.00			
2	512400	Labour Cost Accruual USD	Dr	USD	1666.6	7 1.5000	000	2500.01			
	4								•		
				Transaction Amount				Base Am	ount		
				Debit Total 0.00		Debit Total 2	500.01				
				Credit Total 0.00		Credit Total 2	500.00				
									_		
	Create Vouch	er			Create And Authorize Vou	cher					
Attach Not	tach Notes Edit Zournal Voucher										
									_		

# Figure 7.11 Convert Memorandum Voucher

- 1. Select the memorandum voucher to be converted in the "Select Memorandum Voucher" page.
- 2. The "Convert Memorandum Voucher" page is launched. See Figure 7.11.
- 3. Enter the **Voucher No** or select **Numbering Type** in the header.
- 4. Enter **Remarks**, if required.
- 5. Click the Create Voucher pushbutton to create a regular voucher
- 6. Click the **Create and Authorize** pushbutton to create the voucher in authorized status.



# Theme Financial Book Closure: Scenario 5 – Financial Book Closure

S No	Flow of Events	Primary Actor	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1.	Close Receiving Function Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Receiving Function Calendar	<u>Close Receiving</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the receiving function calendar.</li> </ol>
2.	Close Inventory Management Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Inventory Management Calendar	<u>Close Inventory</u> <u>Management</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the receiving function calendar.</li> </ol>
3.	Close Maintenance Function	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Maintenance Function	<u>Close</u> <u>Maintenance</u> <u>Functio</u> n	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the maintenance function calendar</li> </ol>
4.	Close Shipping Function Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Shipping Function Calendar	<u>Close Shipping</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the maintenance function calendar</li> </ol>
5.	Close Fixed Asset Management Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Fixed Asset Management Calendar	<u>Close</u> <u>Fixed Asset</u> <u>Management</u> <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the fixed asset management function calendar</li> </ol>



6.	Close Payables Function Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Payables Function Calendar	<u>Close</u> <u>Payables</u> <u>Functio</u> n <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the payables management function calendar.</li> </ol>
7.	Close Receivables Function Calendar	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar	Close Receivables Function Calendar	<u>Close</u> <u>Receivabl</u> <u>es Functio</u> n <u>Calendar</u>	<ol> <li>Enter the run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Click the "Get" pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details.</li> <li>Close the receivables management function calendar</li> </ol>
8.	Period Closure of Main Finance Book	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Finance Book	<u>Close Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Enter closure run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Select book type as "Main Book"</li> <li>Select the main finance book</li> <li>Select the time as "Period".</li> <li>Select the Year, Period From and To.</li> <li>View status of the closure.</li> <li>Close main finance book.</li> </ol>
				View Processing Status	<u>View Processing</u> <u>Status</u>	1. View closure status.
# ramco

9.	Year Closure of Main Finance Book	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Finance Book View	Close Finance Book View Processing	<ol> <li>Enter closure run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Select book type as "Main Book"</li> <li>Select the main finance book</li> <li>Select the time as "Year".</li> <li>Select the year.</li> <li>View status of the closure.</li> <li>Close main finance book.</li> <li>View closure status.</li> </ol>
				Processing Status	<u>Status</u>	
10.	Period Closure of Consolidation Finance Book	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Finance Book	<u>Close Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Enter closure run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Select book type as "Consolidation Finance Book"</li> <li>Select the consolidation finance book</li> <li>Select the time as "Period".</li> <li>Select the Year, Period From and To.</li> <li>View status of the closure.</li> <li>Close consolidation finance book.</li> </ol>
				View Processing Status	<u>View Processing</u> <u>Status</u>	1. View closure status.
11.	Year Closure of Consolidation Finance Book	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Finance Book	<u>Close Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Enter closure run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Select book type as "Consolidation Finance Book"</li> <li>Select the consolidation finance book</li> <li>Select the time as "Year".</li> <li>Select the year.</li> <li>View status of the closure.</li> <li>Close consolidation finance book.</li> </ol>

# ramco

				View Processing Status	View Processing Status	1. View closure status.
12.	Year Final Closure of Posting Finance Book	Finance Manager	Financial Calendar Closure	Close Finance Book	<u>Close Finance</u> <u>Book</u>	<ol> <li>Enter closure run number manually or generate automatically.</li> <li>Select book type as "Posing Finance Book"</li> <li>Select the posting finance book.</li> <li>Select the closure type as "Final".</li> <li>Select the time as "Year".</li> <li>Select the year.</li> <li>View status of the closure.</li> <li>Close posting finance book.</li> </ol>
				View Processing Status	<u>View Processing</u> <u>Status</u>	2. View closure status.
				View Finance Book Transactions	<u>View Finance</u> Book Pending Transaction	<ol> <li>Select the BFG, Function, OU, Finance Book and Time</li> <li>Retrieve pending transactions.</li> </ol>

# 7.6 FINANCE BOOK CLOSURE

"Closure" is a sequential process, and is handled as "Business Function Group" closure and "Finance Book" closure. Financial periods must be closed sequentially for the closure of the financial year. Business function group closure is the logical closure of various functions since it is the financial transactions originating from these functions that have an impact on account balances.

# 7.6.1 CLOSE RECEIVING FUNCTION CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the receiving business function group.

1. Select Close Receiving Function Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "Close **Receiving Function Calendar**" page is launched. *See Figure 7.12.* 

	Run No. Finance Book Financial Year	AVE V	DEC 2011	¥	Closur	Group Receiving Fu e Type Provisional d From 01 Dec 2011	•	¥	Close Period	. Unit RAMCOOU V /Year Period V To V		
Financial Year Details Financial Year Code FY11 Financial Period Details					Desc	ription Financial Yea	r 2011		Year S	itatus Open		
								A II AI		T		
				Start Date	End Date	Period Status						
DEC11				2011-01-12	2011-31-12	Open						
						Close						
FG Components				Pending Tra	neachanc			Period Closure Sta	hur			

## Figure 7.12 Close Receiving Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select the Finance Book.
- 4. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 5. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 7. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the receiving business function group.

## 7.6.2 CLOSE INVENTORY MANAGEMENT CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the "Inventory Management" business function group.

1. Select Close Inventory Management Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "**Close Inventory Management Calendar**" page is launched. *See Figure 7.13.* 



★ 🏢 Close Inventory Management Caler	ndar							10	⊢ ?	[ø	к
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·											-
Run No.		Business Function	Group Inventory Mana	gement 💌		Org. Unit	RAMCOOU 🔻				
Finance Book AVE 👻		Closu	re Type Provisional	Ŧ		Close Period/Year	Period 💌				
Financial Year 01 JAN 2011	- 31 DEC 2011 🛛	Financial Perio	od From 01 Dec 2011 - 3	1 Dec 2011	v	То	01 Dec 2011 - 31	Dec 2011		Ŧ	
						Get					
<ul> <li>Financial Year Details</li> </ul>											
Financial Year Code FY11		Des	scription Financial Year 20	11		Year Status	Open				
Financial Period Details											
	1				人 画 🛛 🗶 🖾	# # 11 Al		•		1	ρ
# Financial Period Code	Description	Start Date	End Date	Period Status							
1 🗇 DEC11	December 2011	2011-01-12	2011-31-12	Open							
			d								
			Close								
BFG Components	Pending Tra	nsactions			Period Closure State	IS					
Preceding BFG Closure Status											

## Figure 7.13 Close Inventory Management Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select the **Finance Book**.
- 4. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 5. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 7. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the "Inventory Management" business function group.

## 7.6.3 CLOSE MAINTENANCE FUNCTION CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the maintenance business function groups such as component function group or hangar function group.

1. Select Close Maintenance Function Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "Close Maintenance Function Calendar" page is launched. *See Figure 7.14.* 

* 🔋 Close Maintenance Function Calendar										
Run No. Finance Book AVE 🔍 🖤 Financial Year 01 JAN 2011 - 31	DEC 2011 👻	Closure	Sroup Component Func Type Provisional From 01 JAN 2011 - 31	v	•	Close Period/Year	RAMCOOU V Period V 01 JAN 2011 - 31 JAN 2011 Get	,	v	
- Financial Year Details										
Financial Year Code FY11		Descri	iption Financial Year 20	11		Year Status	Open			
Financial Period Details									_	
(4) 4 1 - 2/2 → → - T T.						🔻 🖮 💷 🔺	<b>v</b>		Q	
# E Financial Period Code D	Description	Start Date El	ind Date	Period Status						
1 🖾 JAN11 Ja	anuary 2011	2011-01-01 20	011-31-01	Open						
2 🖾 JAN11 Ja	anuary 2011	2011-01-01 20	011-31-01	Provisionally Closed						
			Close							
BFG Components	Period Closury	e Status			Preceding BFG Clos	aure Status				

## Figure 7.14 Close Maintenance Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select Business Function Group as "Component Function" or "Hangar Function", whichever applicable.
- 4. Select the **Finance Book**.
- 5. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 6. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 7. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.

8. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the maintenance business function group.

# 7.6.4 CLOSE SHIPPING FUNCTION CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the shipping business function.

1. Select Close Shipping Function Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "Close **Shipping Function Calendar**" page is launched. *See Figure 7.15.* 

\star 📋 Close Shipping Function Calendar									? (	0 K
Run No. Finance Book AVEOS V Financial Year V Financial Year V		Closu	n Group Shipping Functi ure Type Provisional iod From 💌	on V V		Close Period	Vunit RAMCOOU V (Year Period V To V			
Financial Period Details								Ŧ		P
	Description	End Date	Period Status		≠ 1≊ UL All		¥			
	#     ID     Financial Period Code     Description     Start Date     End Date     Period Status   Found no rows to display!!!									
			Close							_
BFG Components	Period Closu	e Status			Preceding BFG Close	sure Status				

## Figure 7.15 Close Shipping Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select the **Finance Book**.
- 4. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 5. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 7. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the shipping business function group.

# 7.6.5 CLOSE FIXED ASSET MANAGEMENT CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the fixed asset management business function group.

1. Select Close Fixed Asset Management Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "Close Fixed Asset Management Calendar" page is launched. *See Figure 7.16.* 

inancial year Details Financial Year Code Fy11 Description Financial Year 2011 Year Subtus Open inancial Period Details							
Prancial Year     OI JAN 2011 - 31 DEC 2011     Prancial Period From     01 Dec 2011 - 31 Dec 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Description     Friancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Description     Friancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Description     Friancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Year Status       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year Code     Fri I     Imancial Year 2011     Imancial Year 2011       Imancial Year 2011     I	Run No.		Business Function G	roup Fixed Asset Management	¥	Org. Unit RAMCOOU 🔻	
Get           Get           Inancial Year Cols         Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Cols         Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan="2">Inancial Year Colspan="2">Year Status: Open           Inancial Year Colspan= The Colspan: Open <th>Finance Book</th> <th>AVEOS 🔻</th> <th>Closure</th> <th>Type Provisional 💌</th> <th>Clo</th> <th>ose Period/Year Period 💌</th> <th></th>	Finance Book	AVEOS 🔻	Closure	Type Provisional 💌	Clo	ose Period/Year Period 💌	
Inancial Year Details     Year Status Open       Inancial Year Cole FY11     Year Status Open       Inanc	Financial Year	01 JAN 2011 - 31 DEC 2011 🔹	Financial Period F	From 01 Dec 2011 - 31 Dec 2011	<b>T</b>	To 01 Dec 2011 -	31 Dec 2011
Inancial Year Details     Year Status Open       Inancial Year Cole FY11     Year Status Open       Inanc						Get	
Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details           Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Image: Period Details         Im	Financial year Details						
<ul></ul>	Financial Year Code	FY11	Descri	ption Financial Year 2011		Year Status Open	
	1 1		Start Date Er	nd Date Period Status			
DEC11         December 2011         2011-01-12         2011-31-12         Open	1	1				All	<b>v</b>
DEC11 December 2011 2011-01-12 2011-31-12 Open							
	DEC11	December 2011	2011-01-12 20	11-31-12 Open			
				Close			
One							

## Figure 7.16 Close Fixed Asset Management Calendar

2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.



- 3. Select the Finance Book.
- 4. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 5. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 6. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 7. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the fixed asset management business function group.

## 7.6.6 CLOSE PAYABLES FUNCTION CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the payables business function groups such as "Payment and Adjustment", "Release Payment" or "Supplier Invoicing".

1. Select Close Payables Function Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The "Close **Payables Function Calendar**" page is launched. *See Figure 7.17.* 

* 🔋 Close Payables Function Calendar										
Run No. Finance Book AVE Financial Year 01 JAN 2011- Financial Year Details		Close	an Group Payment and Ad ure Type Provisional iod From 01 Dec 2011 - 3	v		Close Period/Year	RAMCOOU  Period  Port  O1 Dec 2011 - 31 Dec 2011	Get		
Financial Year Declaris     Financial Year Code FY11     Financial Period Details		De	escription Financial Year 20	11		Year Status	Provisionally Closed			
€ € 1 -1/1 > >> = T T.				۸.		Al III Al	<b>v</b>	Q		
# E Financial Period Code	Description	Start Date	End Date	Period Status						
1 🗇 DEC11	December 2011	2011-01-12	2011-31-12	Open						
1 Decii										
			Close							
BFG Components Preceding BFG Closure Status	Pending Tra	nsactions			Period Closure Statu:	s				

Figure 7.17 Close Payables Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select **Business Function Group** as "Payment and Adjustment", "Release Payment" or "Supplier Invoicing", whichever applicable.
- 4. Select the **Finance Book**.
- 5. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 6. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 7. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 8. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the payables business function group.

The system updates the status of the Financial Year / Period as 'Closed' only if there are no transactions pending for authorization in "Payables Management" business component.

If the parameter 'All Auto Match Failed' Invoices during Period Closure" field in the "Set Function Defaults" is set as 'Yes' the system closes the payables calendar even if invoices exists in 'Auto match failed' status.

# 7.6.7 CLOSE RECEIVABLES FUNCTION CALENDAR

This sequence details the process of closing the calendar for the receivables business function groups such as "Customer Receipt and Adjustment", "Customer Invoicing" or "Realize Receipt".

1. Select Close Receivables Function Calendar under the "Financial Calendar Closure" business component. The



#### "Close Receivables Function Calendar" page is launched. See Figure 7.18.

* 🔋 Close Receivables Function Calendar									
Run No. Finance Book AVE V Financial Year 01 JAN 2011-	31 DEC 2011	Closury	Group Customer Invoicin e Type Provisional d From 01 Dec 2011 - 31 D	v	v	Close Period/Year	RAMCOOU V Period V 01 Dec 2011 - 31 Dec 2011	¥	
Financial Year Details     Financial Year Code FY11     Financial Period Details		De	escription Financial Year 20	11		Year Status	Provisionally Closed		
				Å		# 🖷 💷 🗛	<b>v</b>	Q	
# E Financial Period Code	Description	Start Date	End Date	Period Status					
1 🖾 DEC11	December 2011	2011-01-12	2011-31-12	Open					
			Close						
BFG Components Preceding BFG Closure Status	Pending Tra	insactions			Period Closure Statu	us			

#### Figure 7.18 Close Receivables Function Calendar

- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select **Business Function Group** as "Customer Receipt and Adjustment", "Customer Invoicing" or "Realize Receipt", whichever applicable.
- 4. Select the **Finance Book**.
- 5. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 6. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.
- 7. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 8. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the selected calendar for the receivables business function group.

## 7.6.8 CLOSE FINANCE BOOK

This sequence details the process of closing finance book provisionally or finally.

★ 🗎 Close Finance Book							III X 등 다	← ?	¢ K
Run No. Closure Type Provisional Financial Period From 01 Jan 2011 - Financial year Details	- 31 Jan 2011 ▼	Close Pe	ook Type Posting FB riod/Year Period V Period To 01 Jan 2011 - 3		v		AVE  O1 Jan 2011 - 31 Dec 201 Get	1 .	r
Financial Year Code FY11 Financial Period Details		De	escription Financial Year 2	011		Year Statu	5 Open		
44 4 1 - 1/1 > >> = ¥ ¥.						A II AI	•		Q
# E Financial Period Code	Description	Start Date	End Date	Period Status					
1 🗇 JAN11	January 2011	2011-01-01	2011-31-01	Provisionally Closed					
			Close						
BFG Closure Status Year Closure Status	Pending Tra	nsactions			Period Closure Stat	tus			

#### Figure 7.19 Close Finance Book

- 1. The "Close Finance Book" page is launched. See Figure 7.19.
- 2. Enter **Run No** manually based on the parameter set.
- 3. Select **Book Type** as "Main FB", "Consolidation FB" or "Posting FB", whichever applicable.
- 4. Select the Finance Book
- 5. Select the **Closure Type** as "Final" or "Provisional".
- 6. Select Close Period / Year as "Period" or "Year". If "Year" is selected then select Financial Year. Otherwise, select

## Financial Year, Financial Period From and Financial Period To.

- 7. Click the **Get** pushbutton to retrieve the financial period details in the multiline.
- 8. Select the **Financial Period Code** and click the **Close** pushbutton to close the period provisionally or finally.

## 7.6.9 VIEW PROCESSING STATUS

This sequence explains the process of viewing the processing status of the financial calendar closure.

- s	earch Criteria									
	Business Function Group All	<b>v</b>	Org. U	nit All 🔻		Fina	nce Book All	Ŧ		
	Run No.		Run Date Fro	om	(11)	Run	Date To			
										Searc
	earch Results									
Т	4 1 - 5 / 730 → →→ ▼ ▼.				📕 🖿 🖾 🖾	🗎 🔻 🛥 💷 🗚			Ŧ	
	Run No.	Business Function Group	Org Unit	Finance Book	Run Date	Run Status				
		вк	RAMCOOU	AVEOS		Open				
	AVEOS/1	ВК	RAMCOOU	AVEOS		Provisionally Closed				
		ВК	RAMCOOU	AVEOS	2014-10-01	Open				
		ВК	RAMCOOU	AVEOS	2014-30-09	Open				
		BK	RAMCOOU	AVEOS	2015-12-10	Open				
		Abort	R	esume		Undo				

#### Figure 7.20 View Processing Status

- 1. The "View Processing Status" page is launched. See Figure 7.20.
- 2. Search for the closure details based on: Business Function Group, Org. Unit, Finance Book, Run No, Run Date From and Run Date To.
- 3. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the closure details.
- 4. View the details.

## 7.6.10 VIEW PENDING TRANSACTIONS

This sequence elaborates the process of viewing the pending transactions to be cleared before financial calendar closure.

	View Finance Book Pending Transactions								≣ ×;	5 G	+	? []	K
	Business Function Group Book Keeping V	-	Function All   Function I JAN 2011 - 3	1 DEC 2011	-1				RAMCOOU 💌 01 JAN 2011 - 3	1411-2011		_	
	Hinance Book	HIL	nancial fear OI JAW 2011 - 3	I DEC 2011				Financial Period	01 JAN 2011 - 3	1 JAN 2011		Get	
-	Transaction Details												
44	∢ [No records to display]  ▶  ≫  ▼  ▼ x					XZİ	* * H	All		Ŧ			Q
#	Function Org Unit	Transaction Type Vouch	her No.	Transaction Date		Remarks							

## Figure 7.21 View Finance Book Pending Transactions

- 1. The "View Finance Book Pending Transactions" page is launched. See Figure 7.21.
- 2. Search for the pending transactions based on: Business Function Group, Function, Org. Unit, Finance Book, Financial Year and Financial Period.
- 3. Click the Get pushbutton to retrieve the pending transactions details.
  - Note: The system does not retrieve transactions involving 4-way order based invoices in "Draft" status that got created without GR information.
- 4. View the details.

# TAX INVOICE WINDOW

As per Malaysian GST Statutory Requirement, Tax Invoice is to be issued to Customers within 21 days of the 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply'. If it is issued after 21 days, the Tax is liable to be paid on the date of 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply', which might end up in filing a revised return.

Similarly Tax Invoice is to be received from the Supplier within 21 days from 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply' to claim the input on the Invoice date. If the Tax Invoice is received from vendor after 21 days the input should be claimed on the 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply'. If the Company has already submitted GST Return for the period to Customs Department without reporting the above tax invoice, it means Company has reported the Tax Return INCORRECTLY due to late invoice issued by the supplier. The company cannot claim the Input Tax Credit of the above Tax Invoice in the upcoming period. The company can either file a revised GST return along with fine or forego such Input.

Manage Tax Invoice Window enables users to monitor and review the exceptional Customer/ Supplier Invoices which breach the tax Invoice Window days and to account the Tax on the correct date. Tax invoice enables recording of tax on correct date through Tax adjustment journals by reversing the TCD Input / Output accounting on Invoice Date & accounting the same on the respective documents original 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply'.



## Theme Tax Invoice Window: Scenario 1 – Manage Tax Invoice Window

S No	Flow of Events	Component Name	Activity Name	UI Name	Functional Steps
1	Generate / Reverse Tax Adjustment Journal Voucher	Tax Invoice Window	Manage Tax Invoice Window	<u>Manage</u> <u>Tax Invoice</u> <u>Window</u>	<ol> <li>Specify the search criteria to retrieve the invoices in the multiline.</li> <li>Modify the tax invoice details if required in the multiline.</li> <li>Save the tax invoice details and click 'Confirm' to generate Tax Adjustment Journal Vouchers.</li> </ol>

# 8.1 MANAGING TAX INVOICE WINDOW

Manage Tax Invoice Window enables users to monitor and review the exceptional Customer/ Supplier Invoices which breach the tax Invoice Window days and to account the Tax on the correct date. Tax invoice enables recording of tax on correct date through Tax adjustment journals by reversing the TCD Input/ Output accounting on Invoice Date & accounting the same on the respective documents original 'Point of Sale'/ 'Time of Supply'.

You can generate tax adjustment journal vouchers for supplier / customer invoices. Tax adjustment journal voucher is generated when the tax invoice window is greater than 21 days. You can retrieve supplier / customer invoices in all statuses other than 'Fresh' / 'Draft' for generating tax adjustment journal vouchers.

Tax Adjustment Journals can also be reversed. Tax Adjustment Journals with status 'New' 'Fresh' 'Reverse' status cannot be reversed, only records with 'Completed' status can be reversed.

## 8.1.1 MANAGING TAX INVOICE WINDOW

1. Select Manage Tax Invoice Window under Tax Invoice Window business component. The Manage Tax Invoice Window page appears. *See Figure 8.1*.

searc	h Criteria														
		Contex	t Pending Invoice 💌			Date From 2015-01-07			)	То 2016-31-03			Trading Partner Based Trading Partner #		
		Tax Typ	Type 🖲 Input Tax 🗇 Output Tax		Tax	Tax Invoice Window >				Status			Display Option Exceptions		
<u>.</u>	Addition	al Parameters													
								Search							
4	< 1	-2/2 > >	+ - 0	× T 1	6								2 🖲 🖬 💷 🔺	<b>v</b>	Q
•		Ref. Doc. Type	Ref. Doc. #	Order #	Date Reference	Ref. Date	Modified Ref. Date	Trading Partner Doc. Date	No. of Days	Trading Partner #	Trading Partner Name	Doc. Curr.	Document Line Amt. (Doc. Curr.)	Document Line Amt. (Base. Curr.)	Taxable Am
		Goods	GI-010600-	APO0035	Receipt					00000	A & R Taurpaulins, Inc.				
		Goods	GI-010617-	APO0035	Receipt					00198	Supplier 12				

## Figure 8.1 Managing tax invoice window

- 2. In the **Search Criteria** group box, use the Context drop-down list box and select 'Effect JV', 'Review JV' and 'Pending Invoice' to retrieve appropriate invoices in the multiline.
- 3. Enter the date range for which you wish to retrieve the invoices in the **Date From** and **To** fields.
- 4. Enter 'Tax Invoice Window >' field to retrieve the invoices / Ref. documents having tax invoice window greater than the value entered here.
- 5. Select the **Display Option** as 'All' to retrieve all the documents with tax invoice window lesser than / equal to / greater than 21 days or select 'Exceptions' to retrieve all the documents with tax invoice window greater than 21 days.
- 6. Click the **Search** pushbutton to retrieve the invoice documents in the multiline.
- 7. Enter the Modified Ref. Date and JV Remarks.
- 8. Click the **Save** pushbutton to save the tax invoice details.
- 9. Click the **Confirm** pushbutton to confirm the tax invoice details.
  - Note: On confirming tax invoice details, the system generates generate the Tax Adjustment Journal Vouchers if the 'No. of days' (Tax Invoice Window Days) is greater than 21 days.
- 10. Click the Reverse pushbutton to reverse the tax adjustment journal voucher generated for the invoice.

# ramco

# Index

## A

Account Based Budget Control And Analysis, 91 Account Based Mis Reports Definition, 120 Account Classification, 26 Account Code, 117, 130 Account Definition for Aircraft, 83 Account Definition for Hangar, 83 Account Definition, 23 Account Group in Customer master, 14 Account Group in Part Master, 13 Account Group in Supplier Master, 13 Account Group of activated Customer, 14 Account Group of Activated Part, 13 Account Group of In-use Supplier, 14 Account Group, 26, 108, 109 Account ID, 23 Account Material, 74 Account Rule Definition, 70 Accounting Process Parameters, 14 Accrue Service Revenue And Cost, 138 Activate / Inactivate analysis and sub analysis code, 116 analysis code, 115 bank cash details, 34 business unit, 53 company, 51 currency, 47 exchange rate type, 63 finance book, 51 Add for Adjustment, 134 Adjustment Entries Generation, 127 AME #, 127 Asset Class Code, 82 Asset Mapping Options, 14 Assign Analysis Code, 114 Assign Group, 120 Assign analysis code, 117 permitted currencies, 49 usage to event, 78 Associate customers to account group, 18 suppliers to account group, 16

Associating parts to account group, 15 Attach / Detach account codes to company, 24 calendar, 29 posting account code to reporting account code, 27 Attach Calendar, 29 Attach, 24 financial calendar, 28 reporting chart of accounts, 26 Authorizing journal voucher, 128 Auto Reconcile, 98

## В

Bank / Cash / Ptt Definition, 32 Bank Cash PTT Account Code, 80 Bank Code, 34, 35 Bank Reconciliation, 97 Bank Reference, 32, 34 Base Currency, 25, 48 Based on Supplier Bank Type, 32 BSB Number, 55 **Budget Information**, 91 Budgeting, 8 Business Function Group, 148, 152 **Business Scenario** for Revaluation, 10 **Business Scenarios** for Budgeting, 10 for Enterprise Setup, 10 for Financial Book Closure, 10 Reconciliation of for Financial Transactions, 10 for Statutory and Operational MIS, 10 for Tax Invoice Window, 10 Business Unit, 51

# С

Chart of Accounts ID, 24, 27 Chart of Accounts Type, 25 Close Period / Year, 149 Close finance book, 151 fixed asset management calendar, 149



inventory management calendar, 147 maintenance function calendar, 148 payables function calendar, 150 receivables function calendar, 150 receiving function calendar, 147 shipping function calendar, 149 Closure Type, 150, 151 COGS Events, 71 Company Name, 24, 25 Company Setup, 46 **Compute Periods**, 28 Consolidation Account Code, 23 Control Account Type, 107, 118 Control Action, 91 Convert memorandum voucher, 141 Copy reporting chart of accounts, 26 Create, 123 additional account definition, 77 analysis code, 114 bank cash account definition, 80 bank usage information, 32 bank, 32 business unit, 52 cash book details, 35 company, 47 consumption account definition, 82 country, 46 currency and country, 46 currency denomination, 46 distribution setup, 129 exchange rates, 64 finance book, 50 financial calendar, 28 financial statement layout with assigning group and section heading, 123 item account definition, 78 journal voucher, 127, 141 logistic organization, 53 multiple account for work order, 75 multiple sale account definition, 71 operating chart of accounts id, 23 operating chart of accounts, 23 payables account definition, 80 quick codes, 65 receivables account definition, 81

recurring voucher template, 139 reporting chart of accounts id, 25 reporting chart of accounts, 25 reversal journal voucher, 136 schedule using account code and group, 120 segment, 56 service sale account definition, 83 sub analysis code, 115 tcd account definition, 72, 73, 79 Currency Code Loading Option, 63 Customer #, 139 Customer Account Group, 18 Customer Group Code, 81

## D

Default Sub Analysis Code, 117 Define single sale account definition, 70 usage, 77 Delete layout, 124 schedule, 120 Description, 28 Detach Calendar, 29 Display Option, 155 Distribution No, 130, 136, 141 Download Rates, 64

# E

Edit analysis code, 114 business unit, 62 company, 48 currency, 60 exchange rate type, 63 finance book, 61 logistics organization, 54 segment, 56 sub analysis code, 115 Effective Date, 47 Employee Receipts, 33 End Date, 28, 53 Enterprise Setup, 8 Entity Accounted, 84 Event, 109 Exchange Rate Type, 63 Exchange Rate, 106, 107



Execution Category, 93 Expense Classification, 127 Export To Excel, 138

## F

Finance Book Closure, 147 Finance Book for Warehouse, 14 Finance Book, 51 Finance Posting Options, 14 Financial / Year Code, 29 Financial Book Closure, 9 Financial Period Code, 28, 148 Financial Statement Layout Definition, 123 Financial Year Code, 28 Financial Year code, 29 Flat Charge, 33 Function, 78

## I

Identification Details, 57 Identification No., 57 Include JV, 134 Incremental Amount, 33 Input Control Total, 128 ISO Country Code, 46 ISO Currency Code, 49, 50

## J

Journal Voucher Type, 30

## L

Layout heading, 23 Legacy Date, 28

## Μ

Mailstop, 48 Maintain Analysis Rule Definition, 93 Maintain address details, 58 allocation & distribution rules, 131 bank reference, 54 identification details, 57 identification references for entities, 57 organization parameters, 58 ou – company mapping, 64 posting rule, 29 reason information, 109 exclude transaction type for tax book, 86 Maintaining customer account group, 17 part account group, 14 Maintenance Base, 84 Maintenance Location, 76 Manage Allocation Packages, 132 Sub Analysis Code Mapping, 116 Managing Tax Invoice Window, 155 Managing tax invoice window, 155 Map to Finance Book, 32 Map BFG – Organization Unit, 55 Material Cost and Resource Cost, 138 Memorandum Voucher Generation, 141 Memorandum, 141

N Number of Units, 60

## 0

Option, 124 Org Unit Details, 65 Org. Unit, 152

## Ρ

Package Desc., 132 Parallel Base Currency, 48 Part Account Group, 16, 17 Part Code, 72 Post Transactions to Tax Book, 86 Post, 86 Posting Account Code, 28 Posting Frequency, 139 Posting Information, 13 Preview, 134 Previous Years, 87 Process JV, 131

## Q

Quarters, 87

## R

Reason Code, 109 Reconciliation of Financial Transactions, 8 Recurring Voucher Generation, 139 Recurring?, 132 Reference No From, 99 Report Consumption after Main Core Return, 14 Report Option, 118 Revaluation Of Customer / Supplier / Account, 106 **Revaluation Period**, 106 Revaluation, 8; Account Balances, 107 Revalue customer account balances, 106 supplier account balances, 107 Reversal Period, 127 **Reversal Voucher No, 128** Reverse account balance revaluation, 110 customer balance revaluation, 109 journal voucher, 128 supplier balance revaluation, 109 **Review/Process** allocation packages, 132 Review accounting information, 133 Reviewing financial statements, 86 Rule ID, 131 Rule Line #, 133 Run #, 133 Run Date, 130 Run No, 147, 149, 151

## S

Schedule No From, 121 Segment Details, 56 Segment Type, 56 Set bank charges, 33 consumption account parameters, 74 function defaults, 62, 128 **Setting Options** for account group, 13 for finance book postings, 13 Setting Up accounts group, 13 Simulate asset account balance revaluation, 108 Simulation Run No, 108 Start Date, 28 Statutory and Operational MIS, 9 Stock Adjustment Account, 79 Sub Analysis Code From, 116 Sundry Payments, 33 Supplier #, 139 Supplier Account Group, 16 Supplier Group, 80

SWO #, 127

## Т

Tax Invoice Window, 9, 155 Tax Region, 57 TCD Code, 79 Telex, 59 Template No, 139 Transaction Amount, 129 Trial Balance, 87 Two-Dimension Expense Analysis Using Analysis, 114 U Unassign analysis code, 117

permitted currencies, 49 UnMap Business Unit, 54 Unreconcile and Generate new bank statements, 99 Usage, 82

## V

Variant #, 129 View By, 134 View account balance, 118 bank, 35 exchange rates by date, 64 pending transactions, 152 processing status, 152 Voucher No, 109, 142

## Y

Year End Adjustment Entries Generation With, 136 Telex, 59 Template No, 139 Transaction Amount, 129 Trial Balance, 87 Two-Dimension Expense Analysis Using Analysis, 114

## U

Unassign analysis code, 117 permitted currencies, 49 UnMap Business Unit, 54 Unreconcile and Generate new bank statements, 99 Usage, 82

## V

Variant #, 129 View account balance, 118 bank, 35 exchange rates by date, 64 pending transactions, 152 processing status, 152 View By, 134 Voucher No, 109, 142

## Υ

Year End Adjustment Entries Generation With, 136



# Corporate Office and R&D Center

## **RAMCO SYSTEMS LIMITED**

64, Sardar Patel Road, Taramani, Chennai – 600 113, India Office :+ 91 44 2235 4510 / 6653 4000 Fax :+91 44 2235 2884 Website : www.ramco.com